

# TikiWiki

## Table of Contents

Wiki Pages.....	24
Introduction.....	24
Introduction.....	24
Goals.....	25
Tikiwiki & Community Goals.....	25
Installation.....	25
Installation.....	25
Requirements and Setup.....	25
Requirements and Setup.....	25
Recommended Minimal Hardware Configuration.....	26
Required Software for Tiki 1.8.x.....	26
Required Software for Tiki 1.9.x.....	26
Optional Softwares or Libs.....	26
PHP Setup.....	27
Apache Setup.....	28
MySQL Setup.....	28
Enable Large Image or File Support.....	28
Other DB setup.....	29
Download.....	29
Downloading Tikiwiki.....	29
Official repository.....	29
Developers version.....	29
Linux.....	30
Tiki Installation on Linux.....	30
Initial Steps: Download, Unpack, Create Directories.....	30
Install with RPM.....	32
Install from Source.....	32
Install on Debian.....	32
Install on Gentoo.....	32
Normal installation.....	32
Installation of last package (but not CVS).....	32
Windows.....	33
Windows Install.....	33
Why install Tiki on a Windows desktop ?.....	33
Is Tiki complicated to install ?.....	33
OK, I'm ready to go. What do I need ?.....	34
Requirements.....	34
Step 1: Download EasyPHP and TikiWiki.....	34
Step 2: Setup EasyPHP.....	34
Step 3: Create a database for Tiki.....	34
Step 4: Create a MySQL user.....	35
Step 5: Decompress Tiki files.....	35

---

Step 6: Run the install script .....	35
Step 7: Log in for the first time .....	36
Step 8: Congratulations !.....	36
Optional extra steps .....	36
Activate some features .....	36
Create a new user and a group .....	36
Raise PHP's memory limit .....	36
Enable GD.....	36
Install GraphViz and/or Mapserver .....	37
Advanced Settings .....	37
Advanced Settings .....	37
Shared Hosting .....	37
Lite install .....	37
MultiTiki.....	37
Multiple Tikis on a Single Server .....	38
Create a separate database for each url.....	38
Configure Apache for multiple Tikis.....	38
Create the necessary directories within Tiki's main directory .....	38
Rewrite Rules.....	39
Sample TikiWiki Rewrite Rules.....	39
Examples.....	40
ImageMagick Install.....	40
Install ImageMagick.....	40
Install ImageMagick and Libs.....	41
Install Imagick PEAR Module .....	41
Tikiwiki setting up.....	41
GraphViz Install.....	42
Graphviz Install.....	42
Install Graphviz and Libs.....	42
Testing an installed Graphviz Setup .....	42
Troubleshooting Hints.....	42
From Here.....	43
TroubleShooting .....	43
Upgrade .....	43
Configuration .....	44
Configuration .....	44
Quick Start.....	44
Quick Start .....	44
Review of the Tiki Installation .....	44
From Here.....	45
Using profiles.....	45
How does one create a profile?.....	45
Advanced Configuration .....	45
Module Controls.....	45
Features .....	46
Features .....	46
From Here.....	48

---

Wiki.....	49
Wiki.....	49
Understanding Wikis.....	49
Feature Overview.....	50
Using Wiki Pages.....	51
Using Wiki Pages.....	51
The Wiki Menu.....	52
A Wiki Page.....	53
Creating a Wiki Page.....	54
Last Changes.....	55
Wiki Rankings.....	56
Page History.....	56
Similar Pages.....	56
Undo Edit.....	56
Page Export.....	56
Page Comment.....	56
Page Renaming.....	57
List Pages.....	57
Backlinks & Orphan Pages.....	57
The Sandbox.....	57
Page Monitoring.....	57
Page Permissions.....	57
Show Modules in Wiki Page.....	57
Other Syntax Pages.....	58
Wiki-Syntax Links.....	58
Wiki-Syntax Links.....	58
Quick Reference.....	58
Linking to Wiki Pages.....	59
Linking to External Wiki Pages.....	60
Linking to Web Pages.....	60
Linking to Email Addresses.....	61
tiki-admin_external_wikis.php.....	61
Wiki-Syntax Lists.....	62
Wiki-Syntax Lists.....	62
Quick Reference.....	62
Creating a Bulleted List.....	62
Creating a Numbered List.....	62
Creating a Nested List.....	63
Adding Hidden Details.....	64
Text Continuation.....	64
Creating a Definition List.....	64
Wiki-Syntax Images.....	65
Wiki-Syntax Images.....	65
Quick Reference.....	65
Displaying Images.....	66
Uploading Images.....	66
Images From an Image Gallery.....	66

---

Images From Another Site.....	67
Wiki-Syntax Text.....	68
Wiki-Syntax Text.....	68
The Markup Language Wiki-Syntax.....	68
Quick Reference - Basic Text Formatting.....	69
Basic Text Formatting.....	69
Colored Text.....	69
Web-Safe HTML Colors (Click the + to Open).....	69
Bold Text.....	72
Italic Text.....	72
Underlined Text.....	73
Centered Text.....	73
Monospaced Text for Code.....	73
Text box.....	73
Indent.....	73
Using Square Brackets.....	74
Non-breaking space.....	74
Wiki-Syntax Special Characters.....	74
Wiki-Syntax Special Characters.....	74
Wiki Config.....	75
Wiki Config.....	75
Admin Access.....	76
Sections: Tiki Config Panel.....	77
Wiki settings.....	77
Dumps.....	77
Create a tag for the current wiki.....	78
Restore the wiki.....	78
Remove a tag.....	78
Wiki comments settings.....	78
Wiki attachments.....	78
Export Wiki Pages.....	79
Remove unused pictures.....	79
Wiki Home Page.....	79
Wiki Discussion.....	79
Wiki Link Format.....	80
Wiki page list configuration.....	80
Wiki features.....	81
Sandbox.....	82
Last Changes.....	82
Dump.....	83
Export.....	83
Rating.....	83
History.....	83
List Pages.....	83
Backlinks.....	83
Like pages.....	83
Rankings.....	83

Undo .....	83
Multiprint .....	83
PDF generation .....	83
Comments .....	83
Spellchecking .....	84
Minor Edits .....	84
Use templates .....	84
Warn on edit .....	84
Pictures .....	84
Use page description .....	84
Show page title .....	84
Cache Wiki pages .....	84
Footnotes .....	84
Users can save to notepad .....	84
Users can lock pages .....	85
Use WikiWords .....	85
Page creators are admin of their pages .....	85
Table syntax .....	85
Automonospaced text .....	85
Uses Slideshow .....	85
Wiki History .....	85
Copyright Management .....	86
Wiki Watch .....	86
Wiki Details .....	86
Wiki Modules .....	86
Image Galleries .....	87
Image Galleries .....	87
Feature Overview .....	87
Image Galleries User .....	88
Image Galleries User .....	88
The Menu .....	88
Prior to Gallery Creation .....	88
Creating a Gallery of Images .....	88
Upload Image .....	91
Browse or List Galleries .....	92
Individual permissions for image galleries .....	94
The System Gallery .....	95
Tips & Tricks .....	95
Known bugs and problems .....	95
Image Galleries Config .....	96
Image Galleries Config .....	96
Admin Access .....	96
Sections: Tiki Admin Panel .....	97
Image Galleries .....	97
Home Gallery (main gallery) .....	98
Galleries features .....	98
Use database to store images .....	98

Use directory to store images.....	98
Library to use for processing images.....	99
Uploaded images names must match regex.....	100
Uploaded images names cannot match regex.....	100
Remove images in the system gallery.....	100
Gallery listing configuration.....	101
Image galleries comments settings.....	101
Image Galleries Details.....	102
Image Galleries Details.....	102
Permissions.....	102
Preferences.....	102
Files used.....	103
Database.....	103
Articles.....	103
Articles.....	103
Feature Overview.....	104
Topics.....	104
Article Types.....	104
Articles User.....	105
Using Articles.....	105
The Articles menu.....	105
Editing or Submitting Articles.....	105
Articles Home.....	107
List Articles.....	109
Rankings.....	109
Submit Article.....	110
View Submissions.....	110
Articles Config.....	111
Articles Config.....	111
Admin Access.....	111
Sections: Tiki Admin Panel.....	111
Article/CMS settings.....	111
Articles Details.....	112
Articles Details.....	112
Blogs.....	112
Blogs.....	112
Feature Overview.....	112
About Trackback.....	113
About XMLRPC.....	113
Blogs User.....	114
Using Blogs.....	114
Viewing a List of Available Blogs.....	115
Listing Blogs by Rank.....	116
Reading a Blog.....	117
Printing a Blog Entry.....	118
Mailing a Blog Entry's URL.....	118
Commenting on a Blog Entry.....	119

Creating a Blog.....	119
Blog Configuration Options.....	120
The Blog Header.....	121
Posting an Entry to Your Blog.....	122
Posting Options.....	123
Editing Your Post.....	123
From Here.....	123
Blogs Config.....	124
Blogs Config.....	124
Admin Access.....	124
Sections: Tiki Admin Panel.....	124
Blog settings.....	125
Home Blog (main blog).....	125
Blog features.....	126
Blog listings configuration.....	126
Blog comments settings.....	126
From Here.....	126
Blogs Ref.....	126
Blogs Details.....	126
Modules.....	126
Permissions.....	127
Preferences.....	127
Files used.....	127
Database.....	128
File Galleries.....	129
File Galleries.....	129
Feature Overview.....	129
File Galleries User.....	129
File Galleries User.....	129
Listing file galleries.....	130
Creating file galleries.....	130
Uploading files.....	130
Batch uploads.....	131
Listing file galleries and downloading files.....	131
Permissions.....	131
File Galleries Config.....	132
File Galleries Config.....	132
Admin Access.....	132
Sections: Tiki Admin Panel.....	132
File galleries.....	133
Storing files on the database:.....	133
Storing files on a directory.....	133
Filtering file uploads.....	134
Filename must match:.....	134
Filename must not match:.....	134
File galleries search indexing.....	135
File Galleries Details.....	135

---

Forums .....	135
Forums .....	135
Feature Overview .....	135
Forums User .....	136
Forums User .....	136
Creating/editing forums .....	136
Using the forum .....	138
Setting Global forum permissions .....	141
Setting Individual permissions for a forum .....	142
Forum Rankings .....	142
Forums Admin .....	143
Forums Admin .....	143
Admin Access #1 .....	143
Sections: Tiki Config Panel .....	143
Forums .....	144
Admin Access #2 .....	144
Perms on forum posts and topics .....	144
Forums Details .....	145
Directory .....	145
Directory .....	145
Feature Overview .....	145
Directory User .....	145
Directory User .....	145
Directory Admin .....	145
Directory Admin .....	145
Admin Access .....	146
Sections: Tiki Admin Panel .....	146
Directory .....	146
Directory Details .....	146
FAQs .....	146
FAQs .....	146
Feature Overview .....	147
FAQs User .....	147
FAQs User .....	147
FAQs Admin .....	147
FAQs Admin .....	147
Admin Access .....	147
Sections: Tiki Config Panel .....	147
FAQs settings .....	148
FAQs Details .....	148
Quizzes .....	149
Quizzes .....	149
Feature Overview .....	149
Quizzes User .....	149
Quizzes User .....	149
Quizzes Admin .....	149
Quizzes Admin .....	149



---

Admin Access.....	149
Admin quizzes.....	150
Create/edit quizzes.....	150
Quizzes Details.....	150
Trackers.....	150
Trackers.....	150
Feature Overview.....	150
Trackers User.....	151
Trackers User.....	151
The Menu.....	151
Prior to Tracker Creation.....	151
Creating a New Tracker.....	151
Actions.....	153
Adding Fields to a Tracker.....	153
Using Trackers.....	155
Adding a Tracker Item.....	155
Item Details.....	156
Assigning Items to Specific Tiki Users or Groups.....	157
Monitoring Tracker Items.....	159
Setting Tracker Permissions.....	159
Trackers Admin.....	160
Trackers Admin.....	160
Trackers Settings Panel.....	161
Trackers.....	161
Configure Trackers.....	162
Use database to store files.....	162
Use a directory to store files.....	162
Trackers with Mirror Tables.....	164
1. Explications.....	164
2. Mise en oeuvre.....	165
3. Améliorations.....	166
Trackers Details.....	166
Trackers Details.....	166
Field types Overview.....	167
Surveys.....	167
Surveys.....	167
Feature Overview.....	167
Surveys User.....	167
Surveys User.....	167
Surveys Admin.....	167
Surveys Admin.....	167
Surveys.....	168
Admin surveys.....	168
Create New Survey.....	168
Surveys Details.....	168
Newsletters.....	168
Newsletters.....	168

---

Feature Overview .....	168
Newsletters User.....	169
Newsletters User.....	169
Listing newsletters .....	169
Subscribing and unsubscribing .....	169
Newsletters Admin .....	169
Newsletters Admin .....	169
Newsletters .....	170
Admin newsletters .....	170
Creating newsletters .....	170
Sending newsletters .....	170
Newsletters Details.....	171
Ephemerides .....	171
Ephemerides .....	171
Feature Overview .....	171
Ephemerides User.....	171
Ephemerides User.....	171
Ephemerides Admin .....	171
Ephemerides Admin .....	171
Ephemerides .....	172
Ephemerides Admin .....	172
Calendar filter .....	172
(Day).....	172
Ephemerides Details .....	172
Charts .....	172
Charts .....	172
Feature Overview .....	172
Charts User.....	172
Charts User.....	172
Charts Admin .....	173
Charts Admin .....	173
Charts .....	173
Charts Admin .....	173
Add or edit a chart .....	173
Charts Details .....	173
Charts Details .....	173
Stats .....	173
Stats .....	173
Stats User.....	174
Stats User.....	174
Stats Admin .....	174
Stats Admin .....	174
Stats Details .....	174
Stats Details .....	174
Games .....	174
Games .....	174
Games User.....	174

---

Games User.....	174
Games Admin.....	174
Games Admin.....	174
Games.....	175
Upload a game.....	175
Games Details.....	175
Games Details.....	175
Calendar.....	175
Calendar.....	175
Calendar User.....	176
Using Calendars.....	176
Navigating the Calendar.....	176
The navigation bar.....	176
The Mini-Navigation Calendar.....	177
Special Features.....	177
The Calendars Panel.....	177
The Events Panel (brief note).....	178
The Hide tab.....	178
Zoom Levels/Views.....	178
Day.....	178
Week.....	179
Month.....	181
Calendar Admin.....	182
Calendar Admin.....	182
Calendar Details.....	184
Calendar Details.....	184
Workflow.....	184
Workflow.....	184
Introduction and concepts.....	184
Definitions.....	184
Process.....	184
Activity.....	184
Role.....	184
Instance.....	184
Workitem.....	185
Workflow User.....	185
Workflow User.....	185
Workflow Admin.....	185
Workflow Admin.....	185
Workflow Details.....	185
Workflow Details.....	185
Integrator.....	185
Integrator.....	185
Integrator User.....	185
Integrator User.....	185
Integrator Admin.....	186
Integrator Admin.....	186

---

Integrator Details.....	186
Integrator Details.....	186
Categories.....	186
Categories.....	186
Categories User.....	186
Categories User.....	186
Categories Admin.....	189
Categories Admin.....	189
Categories Details.....	191
Categories Details.....	191
Permissions.....	191
Preferences.....	191
Modules.....	191
Files used.....	191
Database.....	192
Banners.....	192
Banners.....	192
Banners User.....	192
Banners User.....	192
Banners Admin.....	192
Banners Admin.....	192
Banners Details.....	192
Banners Details.....	192
Modules.....	193
Modules.....	193
Modules User.....	194
Modules User.....	194
Modules Admin.....	194
Modules Admin.....	194
Modules Details.....	196
Modules Details.....	196
Chat.....	196
Chat.....	196
Chat User.....	196
Chat User.....	196
Chat Admin.....	196
Chat Admin.....	196
Chat Details.....	196
Chat Details.....	196
Live Support.....	197
Live Support.....	197
Live Support User.....	197
Live Support User.....	197
Live Support Admin.....	197
Live Support Admin.....	197
Live Support Details.....	197
Live Support Details.....	197

---

Maps.....	197
Feature Overview .....	197
Table of Contents .....	198
Useful Links.....	198
Maps User.....	199
The Interface .....	200
Working with Maps.....	201
Zooming and Panning.....	201
Querying a geographical object.....	201
Changing the Image size of the map.....	201
Selecting Views from dropdown list.....	201
Selecting the layers on the map.....	201
Maps Editor .....	201
Maps Layer Management .....	202
Maps Mapfiles Manager .....	202
Maps Details .....	202
Maps Details.....	202
Maps Mapfile Tutorial .....	202
Mapfile structure .....	203
Comments .....	203
Objects or Groups.....	203
A word on colors.....	204
Mapfile header .....	204
Map object .....	206
Web.....	206
Metadata .....	207
VIEW.....	207
Reference .....	207
Legend.....	208
Scalebar .....	208
Query .....	209
Layers.....	209
Vector layer.....	209
Layer Type.....	209
Shapefile.....	210
Mapinfo TAB.....	210
Query .....	210
Labels.....	211
Thematic Mapping .....	212
Metadata .....	213
WIKI.....	213
DOWNLOAD.....	213
Raster layer.....	214
Geotiff.....	214
Image Tiles.....	214
Grid Layer.....	215
Maps MapView .....	215

---

Working with Views .....	215
Creating Views .....	216
Specifying the View .....	216
Set View Extents .....	216
Adding in the Views .....	216
Maps Admin .....	217
Administration .....	217
Installation .....	217
Configuration .....	217
Maps Install .....	217
Pre-requisites .....	217
Compilation of mapscript .....	217
Installation of mapscript .....	218
Creation of directories and installation of sample data .....	218
Automatic removal of generated images .....	220
Complete setup in Tiki .....	220
Maps Config .....	220
Tikibot .....	221
Tikibot .....	221
Tikibot User .....	221
Tikibot User .....	221
Tikibot Admin .....	221
Tikibot Admin .....	221
Tikibot Details .....	221
Tikibot Details .....	221
Voice Tiki .....	222
Voice Tiki .....	222
Voice Tiki User .....	222
Voice Tiki User .....	222
Voice Tiki Admin .....	222
Voice Tiki Admin .....	222
Voice Tiki Details .....	222
Voice Tiki Details .....	222
Mobile Tiki .....	222
Mobile Tiki .....	222
Mobile Tiki User .....	223
Mobile Tiki User .....	223
Mobile Tiki Admin .....	223
Mobile Tiki Admin .....	223
Mobile Tiki Details .....	223
Mobile Tiki Details .....	223
Structures .....	223
Structures .....	223
Managing Structures .....	223
Create New Structure .....	223
Editing an Existing Structure .....	224
Adding Pages to Current Node .....	224

---

Structure Layout.....	224
Navigating Structures.....	225
Table Of Contents.....	225
Slide Show.....	225
PDF Creation.....	225
Structures User.....	226
Structures user.....	226
Managing Structures.....	226
Create New Structure.....	226
Editing an Existing Structure.....	227
Adding Pages to Current Node.....	228
Structure Layout.....	229
Navigating Structures.....	229
Table Of Contents.....	230
Slide Show.....	230
PDF Creation.....	230
Structures Admin.....	231
Structures Admin.....	231
Structures Details.....	231
Structures Details.....	231
Comments.....	231
Comments.....	231
Posting a Comment.....	232
Controlling the display of comments.....	232
Viewing Recent Comments.....	232
Comments User.....	233
Comments User.....	233
Comments Admin.....	233
Comments Admin.....	233
Voting.....	233
Comment perms.....	233
Comments Details.....	234
Comments Details.....	234
Copyright Management.....	234
Copyright Management User.....	234
Copyright Management User.....	234
Editing Copyright Notices.....	235
Copyright Management Admin.....	235
Copyright Management Admin.....	235
Copyright Management Details.....	236
Copyright Management Details.....	236
Communications Center.....	236
Communications Center.....	236
Communications Center User.....	236
Communications Center User.....	236
Communications Center Admin.....	236
Communications Center Admin.....	236

---

Communications Center Details.....	236
Communications Center Details.....	236
Spellchecking.....	236
Spellchecking.....	236
Spellchecking User.....	236
Spellchecking User.....	236
Spellchecking Admin.....	237
Spellchecking Admin.....	237
Spellchecking Details.....	237
Spellchecking Details.....	237
Redirect On Error.....	237
Redirect On Error User.....	237
Redirect On Error Admin.....	237
Redirect On Error Details.....	237
Drawings.....	237
Drawings.....	237
Drawings User.....	237
Drawings User.....	237
Drawings Admin.....	237
Drawings Admin.....	237
Drawings Details.....	238
Drawings Details.....	238
HTML Pages.....	238
HTML Pages.....	238
What are HTML pages.....	238
Editing a page.....	238
Applying templates for HTML pages.....	239
Editing dynamic zones for a page.....	239
How dynamic pages work.....	239
Permissions.....	239
HTML Pages User.....	240
HTML Pages User.....	240
HTML Pages Admin.....	240
HTML Pages Admin.....	240
HTML Pages Details.....	240
HTML Pages Details.....	240
Dynamic Content.....	240
Dynamic Content.....	240
Dynamic Content User.....	240
Dynamic Content User.....	240
Dynamic Content Admin.....	240
Dynamic Content Admin.....	240
Dynamic Content Details.....	241
Dynamic Content Details.....	241
Polls.....	241
Polls.....	241
Feature Overview.....	241



---

Set-up Polls as a Side Module .....	241
Polls User .....	241
Polls User .....	241
Polls Admin .....	241
Polls Admin .....	241
Configure Polls .....	242
Polls Details .....	242
Polls Details .....	242
RSS Feeds .....	242
RSS Feeds .....	242
Feature Overview .....	242
RSS Feeds User .....	242
RSS Feeds User .....	242
RSS Admin .....	243
RSS Feeds Details .....	243
RSS Feeds Details .....	243
Shoutbox .....	243
Shoutbox .....	243
Shoutbox User .....	243
Shoutbox User .....	243
Shoutbox Admin .....	243
Shoutbox Admin .....	243
Shoutbox Details .....	244
Shoutbox Details .....	244
Search .....	244
Search .....	244
Overview .....	244
Search modes .....	245
Simple search .....	246
Full text search .....	246
Word highlighting .....	246
Word highlighting from referals .....	247
Search User .....	247
Search User .....	247
Database search engine .....	247
Tikiwiki search engine .....	247
Search Admin .....	248
Search Admin .....	248
2 search modules .....	248
Database search configuration .....	248
Search Details .....	248
Search Details .....	248
MyTiki .....	248
MyTiki .....	248
MyTiki Admin .....	249
MyTiki Admin .....	249
MyTiki Details .....	249

---

MyTiki Details .....	249
Webmail .....	249
Webmail .....	249
Inter-User Messages .....	249
Inter-User Messages .....	249
User Notepad .....	249
User Notepad .....	249
User Tasks .....	249
User Tasks .....	249
The list of tasks: .....	249
Tasks and dates: .....	250
Editing a task: .....	251
View tasks .....	251
The user tasks module .....	251
User Files .....	252
User Files .....	252
User Calendar .....	252
User Calendar .....	252
User Menus .....	252
User Menus .....	252
User Preferences .....	252
User Preferences .....	252
User Bookmarks .....	252
User Bookmarks .....	252
User Modules .....	252
User Modules .....	252
User Watches .....	252
User Watches .....	252
Newsreader .....	253
Newsreader .....	253
Admin Panels .....	253
Admin Panels .....	253
Features Admin .....	253
Features Admin .....	253
Tiki sections and features .....	253
Content Features .....	254
Administration Features .....	254
User Features .....	255
General Layout options .....	255
Layout-per-section Options .....	256
General Admin .....	256
General Admin .....	257
Login Config .....	259
Users Management .....	262
Users Management .....	262
General .....	262
Adding a new user .....	262

---

Adding new users in bulk.....	263
Finding a user.....	263
Deleting a user.....	263
Modifying existing user information.....	264
Configuration.....	264
Groups management.....	264
Thanks to.....	264
Groups Management.....	264
Groups Management.....	264
Permissions Settings.....	264
Permission Settings.....	264
User Administration.....	265
Assigning users to groups.....	266
Group Administration.....	266
Assigning permissions to groups.....	266
Including groups in groups.....	267
Permission Names and Descriptions.....	268
General permissions.....	268
Wiki permissions.....	268
File galleries permissions.....	268
Comment permissions.....	269
Blog permissions.....	269
Image gallery permissions.....	269
Forums permissions.....	269
Communications permissions.....	269
Games permissions.....	270
Quiz permissions.....	270
Articles & Submissions permissions.....	270
FAQ permissions.....	270
User permissions.....	270
Chat permissions.....	270
Content template permissions.....	271
Shout box permissions.....	271
Drawing permissions.....	271
HTML page permissions.....	271
Tracker permissions.....	271
Survey permissions.....	271
Webmail permissions.....	271
Newsletter permissions.....	272
User message permissions.....	272
DSNs.....	272
Directory permissions.....	272
Galaxia Workflow.....	272
Charts.....	272
ExtWikis.....	272
Live Support.....	273
Calendar.....	273

---

Permissions for individual users.....	273
Individual permissions.....	273
Admin DSN.....	273
Admin DSN.....	273
Backups.....	274
Backups.....	274
Banning.....	274
Banning.....	274
Cache.....	274
Cache.....	274
Content Templates.....	274
Content Templates.....	274
Cookies.....	275
Cookies.....	275
Contents.....	275
Feature Overview.....	275
From Here.....	275
Edit Templates.....	276
Edit Templates.....	276
External Wikis.....	276
External Wikis.....	276
Import phpwiki.....	276
Import phpwiki.....	276
Featured Links.....	276
Featured Links.....	276
Mail notifications.....	277
Mail notifications.....	277
Mail-in.....	277
The Wiki mail-in feature.....	277
Edit/Add new mail account.....	278
Other parameters.....	279
Maps Config.....	279
Custom Menus.....	280
Custom Menus.....	280
Theme Control.....	281
Theme Control.....	281
Phpinfo.....	281
Phpinfo.....	281
Admin Details.....	281
Admin Details.....	281
Action Log.....	281
Configuration.....	282
Setting for recording and viewing actions.....	282
Report and Statistics.....	283
Reporting filters.....	283
List actions.....	283
Statistics.....	284

---

Internationalization .....	285
Internationalization Admin .....	286
Internationalization Admin .....	286
How to build a monolingual site? .....	286
How to build a multilingual site? .....	287
To configure a multilingual site: .....	287
To have a multilingual content: .....	287
Modules displayed only for some language .....	288
Multilingual user menu .....	289
Tip .....	289
Goodies .....	289
Installation trouble .....	289
Tuning Tikiwiki .....	289
Tuning Tikiwiki .....	289
Design .....	290
Styles and Themes .....	290
How To Create a Custom Theme .....	290
Layout .....	290
How to modify TPL files .....	291
Overriding templates .....	291
Presentation .....	292
Allow User to Set Theme .....	293
Using multiple Themes / Styles on your Tiki site .....	293
Design rules .....	293
Smarty Templates .....	293
Smarty in TikiWiki .....	294
Tips .....	294
Hacking Tikiwiki .....	294
Integrating another Application .....	294
Adding a new feature .....	294
Using Smarty Filters .....	294
Translating to a new language .....	295
Creating the language .....	295
Step 1 .....	295
Step 2 .....	295
Creating the translation for the interface .....	295
ToolBox .....	295
Linux tools .....	295
Windows tools .....	295
wBloggar .....	296
wBloggar .....	296
Java Tools .....	296
Eclipse .....	296
Annexes .....	296
Annexes .....	296
Collaborative Documentation .....	296
Collaborative documentation .....	296

---

A large pool of knowledge .....	296
A real need for structured documentation .....	296
A proposed plan .....	297
Overview .....	297
Documentation Standards Overview .....	297
Basic Concepts: .....	297
All of these pages are integrated by means of a Wiki structure .....	298
Each feature requires AT LEAST four pages of documentation. ....	298
Getting Started .....	299
Formatting Standards .....	299
Formatting Standards .....	299
Page Names .....	300
Capitalisation .....	300
Page Name .....	301
Headings .....	301
Capitalisation .....	301
Line Spacing .....	301
Page Title .....	302
Major Headings .....	302
Minor Headings .....	302
Emphasis .....	302
Bold .....	302
Italic .....	302
Source Code .....	302
Links .....	303
No WikiWords .....	303
Wiki Page Names .....	303
External Links: Position .....	303
External Links: Typing .....	303
Lists .....	304
Numbered Lists .....	304
Bulleed Lists .....	304
Graphics .....	304
Icons .....	304
Footnotes .....	305
Examples .....	305
Examples .....	305
Topic Pages .....	305
Feature Pages .....	305
Documentation Status .....	306
Documentation Status .....	306
Third Party code .....	314
Smarty .....	314
Adodb .....	314
SmartIrc .....	314
Wollabot .....	314
Mapserver .....	314

SpellChecker .....	315
History .....	315
Changelog 1.9 .....	315
Changelog 1.8 .....	315
Changelog 1.7 .....	315
Changelog 1.7 .....	315
Changelog 1.6 .....	318
Changelog 1.6 .....	318
Changelog 1.5 .....	320
Changelog 1.5 .....	320
Changelog 1.4 .....	322
Changelog 1.4 .....	322
Changelog 1.3 .....	324
Changelog 1.3 .....	324
Changelog 1.2 .....	326
Changelog 1.2 .....	326
Changelog 1.1 .....	328
Changelog 1.1 .....	328
Changelog 1.0 .....	328
Changelog 1.0 .....	328
Copyrights .....	329
Tikiwiki Community .....	329
Tikiwiki Community .....	329

# Wiki Pages

## Introduction

# Introduction

Tiki CMS/Groupware (aka TikiWiki) is a powerful open-source Content Management System (CMS) and Groupware that can be used to create all sorts of Web applications, Sites, Portals, Intranets and Extranets. TikiWiki also works great as a Web-based collaboration tool. TikiWiki is a multi-purpose package with a lot of native options and sections that you can enable/disable as you need them. It is designed to be international, clean and extensible.

TikiWiki incorporates all the features present in several excellent wiki systems available today plus a lot of new features and options, allowing your wiki application to be whatever you want it to be--from a simple wiki to a complex site for a whole user community with many intermediate steps. You can use TikiWiki as a forums site, a chatroom, for poll taking, and much more! The possibilities are endless.

To understand TikiWiki, compare it a high-end single-lens reflex (SLR) camera with lots of expensive lenses. In a well-thought-out SLR camera system, each of the lenses gives you the ability to look at the world in a unique way. You can choose just the right lens for the job. Similarly, Tiki gives you lots of different ways to look at the data with which a group of people are concerned. Use Articles (and make articles your Tiki home page) so that you and your users can post important, fast-breaking news that everyone should read. Use Wiki pages to enable you and your users to upload reams of content without having to learn HTML or hassle with proprietary file formats. Use Forums to launch topic-oriented discussions. Use Blogs to give each user the ability to create chronologically oriented journals. Make vital resources available with File and Image Galleries.

TikiWiki's major features include: article, forum, newsletter, blog, file/image gallery, wiki, drawing, tracker, directory, poll/survey, quiz, FAQ, chat, banner, webmail, calendar, category, ACL, and more. (see full list in [Features](#) )

## Useful Links

- Open Source & Free Software  
<http://www.fsf.org><sup>¶</sup>  
<http://opensource.org><sup>¶</sup>  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\\_Source](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_Source)<sup>¶</sup>
- CMS  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Content\\_management\\_system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Content_management_system)<sup>¶</sup>



- Groupware  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collaborative\\_software](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collaborative_software) 
- 

## Goals

# Tikiwiki & Community Goals

- Build a powerful, leading, complete, user-friendly, stable and secure full featured open source web application, which includes (but is not limited to) cms & groupware features.
  - Find a delicate balance between chaos and order :
    - Features creativity, unrestricted and rapid development.
    - Stability, extensive testing and up-to-date documentation.
  - Keep track of development activity by using a total logging and a systematic publishing.
  - Make it easy for small teams or lonely coder to adopt, enhance or add some features.
  - Help new developers to join the team, learn more and contribute fast.
  - Provide a friendly network of tikiwiki users-developers favorizing mutual assistance and support.
  - Eat our own dogfood the more we can (use tikiwiki for our community activity)
  - To have a fun & friendly community where people can easily contribute & enhance Tiki.
  - World domination
- 

## Installation

# Installation

---

## Requirements and Setup

# Requirements and Setup

## Recommended Minimal Hardware Configuration

- 128 megabytes of RAM (depending on the traffic expected)
- more than 60 megabytes free space on disk (source files take about 35MB and the uploaded images (attachments) go on disk)

## Required Software for Tiki 1.8.x

- PHP 4.1+, TikiWiki won't work with older versions of PHP
- A database server. The most tested is MySQL but options include Postgres, Oracle, Sybase, MSSQL. MySQL 4.1+ does not work with TikiWiki 1.8.x (due to a change in the LIMIT clause in MySQL 4.1.)
- A webserver that can run PHP. Apache is strongly recommended but other web servers may work as well. These include IIS.

## Required Software for Tiki 1.9.x

- PHP 4.1+, TikiWiki won't work with older versions of PHP
- A database server. The most tested is MySQL but options include Postgres, Oracle, Sybase, MSSQL. Tiki 1.9.1 and up is required to use the new [mysqli extension](#) (PHP 5.0 and up).
- A webserver that can run PHP. Apache is strongly recommended but other web servers may work as well. These include IIS.

## Optional Softwares or Libs

Some TikiWiki features can require external additional softwares.

- **image processing** library for thumbnail generation, dynamic chart generation and Prevent automatic/robot registration. This can be either :
  - GD library > 1.5 and PHP compiled
  - ImageMagick but only for thumbnail generation see [ImageMagick Install](#)  
(You don't need to get those 2 libraries if you use PHP 4.3+ since they are bundled.)
- WikiGraph plugin needs GraphViz installed : see [GraphViz Install](#)
- search : For full-text search MySQL 3.23.23+, for boolean full-text search MySQL4.0.1+
- webmail : Will need at least PHP 4.2+
- PDF generation : Needs php-xml package. Consider a PHP error message about `utf8_decode()` upon exportation as an indication you don't have php-xml installed

- maps : Mapserver 4.6 and up as a PHP mapscript module for Linux or Windows, obtainable from <http://mapserver.gis.umn.edu>

## PHP Setup

The location of php.ini depends on your OS. Common locations for Linux are /etc/php.ini , /etc/php/php.ini , /etc/php4/php.ini and (for Gentoo) /etc/php/apache1-php4/php.ini and /etc/php/cli-php4/php.ini

Use a recent version. 4.2+ is recommended but it will work with 4.1 too (there was a session bug in 4.1.2 which has been pretty problematic).

- be sure "pcre" is enabled (compile time)
- you don't need any specific PHP extension to install TikiWiki but GD is recommended and will be used if you have it. (GD is bundled by default with PHP 4.3+)
- if you want to use uploads (files, images) make sure uploads are enabled in php.ini and the upload size is set to xx Mega Bytes. See also mysql setup

```
file_uploads = 0n  
upload_max_filesize = xxM
```

- if you want to use trackback pings (blogs) make sure URL handling is enabled in php.ini.

```
allow_url_fopen = 0n
```

- TikiWiki uses sessions (a common mechanism in PHP4) make sure that the path where PHP stores sessions (php.ini) exists and that PHP can write to that path. (special case in **Shared Hosting** environment where you may have no access to /tmp, in which case replace it with temp, with no slash)

```
session.save_handler = files  
session.save_path = /tmp
```

- it is highly recommended to increase the maximum memory size for PHP scripts from 8 MB to at least 16 MB if not 32 MB in your php.ini configuration file. Uploaded files are hashed with md5(), so watch this setting too if you upload files of several megabytes. Whilst TikiWiki can run in 8 MB environments for most actions eventually as you load your TikiWiki with content it requires more memory. Please dont use TikiWiki in 8Mb environments, it will cause you more problems later on. Before reporting a problem, particularly getting blank pages, change to 16 or 32 MB.

```
memory_limit = 16M
```

- another settings recommended to change which may cause timeouts if your wiki is large and prevent you from doing a backup through the Admin menu

```
max_execution_time = 60  
max_input_time = 60
```

- set `magic_quotes_gpc` to off in `php.ini`

```
magic_quotes_gpc = Off
```

- for character encoding consistency reasons it is recommended to set

```
default_charset = "utf-8"
```

## Apache Setup

- see [Rewrite Rules](#) for special url-rewrite configuration.

## MySQL Setup

Indicated commands are for example only, in case you use command-line. If you are not very comfortable with MySQL, consider using PhpMyAdmin.

- create an empty database for storing TikiWiki data

```
mysqladmin create tikidb
```

- it's strongly advised you create a new mysql user for acces to the created database

```
mysql -e "grant all on tikidb.* to tikidbuser@localhost identified by  
'tikipass';"  
mysql -e "flush privileges;"
```

## Enable Large Image or File Support

Commonly, people wish to store images or files larger then the default size of 1 MB. To allow larger files, up to 16 MB, add (or request your administrator to add) the following lines to the MySQL configuration file, where 'xxx' is any number from 1 to 16:

```
[mysqld]  
set-variable = max_allowed_packet=xxxM
```

Do not forget to set accordingly the `upload_max_filesize` in your `php.ini`

### Other DB setup

- perform the equivalent operations to those in the *MySQL Setup* section, above, with your DB
- 

### Download

# Downloading Tikiwiki

### Official repository

You can find all official Tiki releases, documentation, and add-ons from

- Sourceforge download page  
[http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group\\_id=64258](http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=64258)

### Developers version

Archives daily generated with a developer account  
*thanks ohertel !*

- HEAD (unstable) branch (1.10)  
<http://tikiwiki.org/tikiball.tar.bz2>
- DEVELOPMENT (unstable) branch (1.9)  
[http://de.tikiwiki.org/tar/lastiki\\_BRANCH-1-9.tar.bz2](http://de.tikiwiki.org/tar/lastiki_BRANCH-1-9.tar.bz2)
- STABLE branch (1.8)  
*Note: this feed is the latest from 1.8 branch and will contain some code that isnt in the latest 1.8.X release. This is also classed as unstable.*  
[http://de.tikiwiki.org/tar/lastiki\\_BRANCH-1-8.tar.bz2](http://de.tikiwiki.org/tar/lastiki_BRANCH-1-8.tar.bz2)

When you have downloaded TikiWiki, you are ready to install on [Linux](#), [Windows](#) or on a [Shared Hosting](#) account.

---

## Linux

# Tiki Installation on Linux

### Initial Steps: Download, Unpack, Create Directories

These initial steps presume you're installing on a Linux machine running the Apache Webserver. Read this once top to bottom before getting started. If you're using a Windows box you can ignore the portion about setting permissions, but you'll have to set up some of Tiki's directories manually.

Before you get started it's a good idea to know

- your database user name and password
- your apache user and group ID

---

If you're using the rpm that is available you can skip down to browser based install.

These are notes on how to setup and configure Tiki.

Step one:

Unpack and set the necessary permissions

unpack to the document root of where you want tiki installed, e.g. /var/www/tiki/  
bz2 file Use:

```
tar xvjf tikiwikiv.xxx
```

Step two:

CHMOD the file setup.sh to 755.

```
chmod 755 setup.sh
```

The script setup.sh in this directory assigns necessary permissions for the directories that the webserver writes files to. It also creates the (initially empty) cache directories.  
Usage: ./setup.sh user group rights list of virtual host domains

For example, if apache is running as user \$AUSER and group \$AGROUP, type:  
You can find your group using the command 'id'.

```
su -c './setup.sh $AUSER'
```

Alternatively, you may wish to set both the user and group:

If not root then

```
su -c './setup.sh $USER $AGROUP'
```

This will allow you to delete certain files/directories without becoming root. Or, if you can't become root, but are a member of the group apache runs under (for example: \$AGROUP), you can type:

```
./setup.sh $USER $AGROUP
```

If root then, and are not a member of the apache group, then type:

```
./setup.sh $USER yourgroup 02777
```

Replace yourgroup with your default group.

NOTE: If you do execute this last command, you will not be able to delete certain files created by apache, and will need to ask your system administrator to delete them for you if needed.

To use Tiki's multi-site capability (virtual hosts from a single DocumentRoot) add a list of domains to the command to create all the needed directories. For example

If Root then

```
root@localhost tiki]# sh ./setup.sh youruser nobody 02775 test1 test2 test3
```

If not Root then

```
./setup.sh $USER $AGROUP 02777 domain1 domain2 domain3
```

This will get you to the next screen go to step three below.

Step three: browser based setup

- create a tiki database
  - using PhpMyAdmin (cache) and MySQL
  - or on the command line mysqladmin create dbname the database name is usually called "tiki"
- Point your browser to the web address that corresponds to the file tiki-install.php ([http://your\\_host/tiki/tiki-install.php](http://your_host/tiki/tiki-install.php))
- Follow the instructions there you'll need the password and user name for your database
- For the first time to log into Tiki is
  - user: admin
  - password: admin

Step four: Custom configuration

Next you can configure Tiki to your needs:

- Choose which features you want switched on
  - click on <http://localhost/tiki/tiki-admin.php> on the left side of your screen
- (Optionally) create groups of users that share permissions
- Assign appropriate permissions

More information

---

### **Install with RPM**

Please see the page [Linux](#) as this contains the source code installation procedure.

---

### **Install from Source**

---

#### **Install on Debian**

Install on Debian Gnu Linux

---

#### **Install on Gentoo**

##### **Normal installation**

To install Tikiwiki on gentoo system simply type

```
emerge tikiwiki
```

##### **Installation of last package (but not CVS)**

In `/etc/portage/package.keywords` add line

```
www-apps/tikiwiki ~x86
```

and type

```
emerge tikiwiki
```

---



## Windows

# Windows Install

- **Windows Install**
  - **Why install Tiki on a Windows desktop ?**
  - **Is Tiki complicated to install ?**
  - **OK, I'm ready to go. What do I need ?**
    - **Requirements**
    - **Step 1: Download EasyPHP and TikiWiki**
    - **Step 2: Setup EasyPHP**
    - **Step 3: Create a database for Tiki**
    - **Step 4: Create a MySQL user**
    - **Step 5: Decompress Tiki files**
    - **Step 6: Run the install script**
    - **Step 7: Log in for the first time**
    - **Step 8: Congratulations !**
  - **Optional extra steps**
    - **Activate some features**
    - **Create a new user and a group**
    - **Raise PHP's memory limit**
    - **Enable GD**
    - **Install GraphViz and/or Mapserver**

## Why install Tiki on a Windows desktop ?

Tiki is typically used on a server. However, there are instances where installing on a server is not ideal or necessary.

- Tiki can be used as a personal knowledge base
- Testing out Tiki before getting a host
- Easier to install & test locally
- Using Tiki on a local Intranet
- If you have a slow or unreliable Internet connection.
- ..add your reason here!

Tiki has an internal backup system. You will be able to transfer all your data to a another Tiki installation later on if you wish.

## Is Tiki complicated to install ?

Tiki is fairly easy to install thanks to the install script. However, it is not yet a double click experience Windows users are used to. It gets complicated because Tiki relies on three major external applications to run.

- PHP (scripting language)
- Web server (usually Apache)
- Database (usually MySQL)

These three applications are needed to run Tiki. The nice folks at EasyPHP have bundled these three plus phpMyAdmin (to administer your database via a browser). Once these applications installed, a Tiki database must be created and a Tiki MySQL user must be created with appropriate privileges.

### OK, I'm ready to go. What do I need ?

These instructions are designed to be used as a step-by-step guide. You can print them out and/or just keep this browser window open. They explain how to install EasyPHP (which provides in a quick way PHP, Apache, MySQL and more) and then setup Tiki. They were tested on a Windows XP machine with EasyPHP 1.7 and TikiWiki 1.8, and a Windows 2000 machine with EasyPHP 1.6 and TikiWiki 1.7.1.1. They should work with few differences on similar environments.

#### Requirements

- A Windows PC (XP, 2000, ME, 98, ...)
- 20 minutes (excluding download time for about 16 MB, from step 1 to 9)
- A decompression utility, as 7-Zip (see **Useful Links** section at bottom of this page).
- Disk space: 60 MB (Keep in mind you will have Tiki + EasyPHP (PHP + Apache + MySQL + phpMyAdmin))

#### Step 1: Download EasyPHP and TikiWiki

See the links at the bottom of this page. For TikiWiki, you can choose between different compression formats, you most probably want the .zip, or the .7z if you have 7-Zip.

#### Step 2: Setup EasyPHP

1. After the file has downloaded, execute `easyphp1-7_setup.exe`
2. Accept all the default settings (some messages may be in French)
3. Start EasyPHP (click start->Programs->EasyPHP 1.7->EasyPHP)

You should then see an EasyPHP logo in your system tray (to the right, near the clock). You can scan what option it features if you wish. If you want to use Tiki on a regular basis check **Start on windows startup**.

#### Step 3: Create a database for Tiki

1. Point your browser to <http://127.0.0.1/mysql/>
2. In the field **Create new database** enter *tiki* (or something else if you want).
3. Click **Create** .

You should see **Database tiki has been created.**

**Step 4: Create a MySQL user**

1. Point your browser to <http://127.0.0.1/mysql/>
2. Click **Privileges**.
3. Click **Add a new User**.
4. Fill some informations :
  1. **User name:** Enter *tikiadmin* or another name if you wish.
  2. **Password:** Put a safe password here, you will need it later.
  3. **Re-type:** Re-enter the password.
  4. Check all privileges.
5. Click **Go**.

You should see **You have added a new user.**

**Step 5: Decompress Tiki files**

- Uncompress Tiki files (normally in Program Files\EasyPHP\www)

Make sure the files are in `\www\tikiwiki-1.8\` and not under `\www\`

**Step 6: Run the install script**

1. Point your browser to <http://127.0.0.1/tikiwiki-1.8/tiki-install.php>  
You can then just follow the script's instructions or follow the rest of this step.
2. Fill the informations :
  1. **Database type:** MySQL 4.x
  2. **Host:** localhost (leave as is)
  3. **User:** Enter *tikiadmin* or what you chose at step 4.4.1.
  4. **Password:** Enter the password you chose at step 4.4.2.
  5. **Database name:** Enter *tiki* or what you chose at step 3.2.
3. Click **Submit Query**.  
If your browser offers to "remember values" say no.
4. Choose the profile that will determine initial settings. *BasicEnabled* is recommended for quick testing but you may want *Default* instead. Detailed descriptions can be read using the link.
5. Click **create**.  
You should see **Your database has been configured and Tiki is ready to run, if this is your first install your admin password is 'admin'.**
6. Click **Click here to remove the install script and proceed into tiki.**

You should finally enter the Tiki interface and see **Permission denied you cannot view this page**.

If you get a timeout error, you need to change your `php.ini` to (:  
`max_execution_time = 120`) and restart Apache. The first time a page is called, Tiki generates a template. The next time, the page is generated much faster.

### Step 7: Log in for the first time

Log in using the login box in the right-hand column.

1. Enter those informations :
  1. **user**: Enter *admin*.
  2. **pass**: Enter *admin*.
2. Click **login**.
3. Change the default password.

### Step 8: Congratulations !

It is recommended to create a new user and give him admin privileges instead of regularly using the admin account. You can now explore the interface but you should check the extra steps before to get you started.

## Optional extra steps

### Activate some features

Click **Admin (click!)** and then the first icon, Choose what you want to use. As always you can click the help icon at the top of the page to get some information on what you can do.

### Create a new user and a group

- Click **Users** from the Admin menu to add users.
- Click **Groups** from the Admin menu to add groups.
- From **Admin groups** click **assign perms** to assign the right permissions to your groups.

You probably need to spend some time there so that everyone has access to and only to what it should access.

### Raise PHP's memory limit

Although PHP should run Tiki with 8MB of memory only, it's likely that you will need to set it to 16 MB even if it seems to work at most places.

### Enable GD

GD is an graphic library used to perform manipulations on images. Image galleries need such a library. Since GD is bundled with EasyPHP, all you need to do to get image galleries working is to uncomment the line in php.ini that includes GD's DLL and restart Apache.

### Install GraphViz and/or Mapserver

If you want to use WIKIGRAPH plugin, you need to install GraphViz. Maps need Mapserver to work.

### Useful Links

- EasyPHP  
<http://www.easyphp.org>
    - Download EasyPHP 1.7 (11 MB)  
[http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/quickeasyphp/easyphp1-7\\_setup.exe?download](http://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/quickeasyphp/easyphp1-7_setup.exe?download)
  - Download TikiWiki 1.8 (4-6 MB)  
[http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group\\_id=64258&package\\_id=61427](http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=64258&package_id=61427)
  - Decompression utilities
    - 7-Zip (Open Source, 41 languages, recommended)  
<http://www.7-zip.org>
    - WinZip (Free evaluation version available)  
<http://www.winzip.com>
    - PowerArchiver  
<http://www.powerarchiver.com>
- 

### Advanced Settings

# Advanced Settings

---

### Shared Hosting

---

### Lite install

---

### MultiTiki

Note: This documentation is for Tiki, version 1.8. It probably works for earlier versions, but I haven't tested it. For Tiki version 1.9 and later there is a different approach that requires editing db/tiki-db.php and using some new features in tiki-install.php. The newer variant is scantily documented at <http://tikiwiki.org/MultiTiki19>.

# Multiple Tikis on a Single Server

It is possible to have multiple Tikis on a single server. There are three major requirements that must be satisfied:

- Tiki must have an access to a separate database for each URL.
- Apache must know how to associate multiple URLs with the Tiki.
- You must create the necessary directories with the Tiki's main directory.

## Create a separate database for each url.

- Each database will have a different name. In mysql, creating the databases is normally accomplished with the mysqladmin command. You may have permission to create the database, or you may have to ask a system administrator. To actually tell Tiki which database goes with which URL you have to edit one of Tiki's PHP files. The file db/local.php is designed for this purpose.

## Configure Apache for multiple Tikis.

- Typically, each Tiki will be accessed by a separate URL through Apache. Generally, the URLs are specified as virtual hosts — often in VirtualHost stanzas within Apache's configuration file. Remember to restart Apache after you have changed the configuration files. On Linux this is usually best done with the "apachectl" graceful command.

## Create the necessary directories within Tiki's main directory.

- On a Unix system, the easiest way to create the new directories and set permissions is by specifying more than one tikidomain when you run setup.sh. You would run setup.sh with a command like:

```
./setup.sh apache apache 02755 domain1 domain2 domain3
```

Create the directories manually for Windows hosting.

It is possible to add additional tikis after you have installed a single Tiki. However, with the exception of the case in the following paragraph, you will have to manually create the needed directories. If you are hosting on a Unix system, you will also need to manually set the ownership and permissions.

<http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=RecipeMultiTiki> has a detailed recipe tested under RedHat, version 8 and version 9 and Yellow Dog Linux, version 3.0. Root access to the Linux machine is required for this approach. If you follow the instructions exactly, there is a Python script you can use to add additional Tikis later.

There are a few minor problems that crop up with this approach. The admins for the various tikis have the ability to overwrite each others changes to the css. Ordinary users with the same login names on different tikis would also be able to overwrite each other's changes to css files. Finally, you must use Apache's mod\_rewrite if you want the different Tikis to have their own favicons.

## Rewrite Rules

### Sample TikiWiki Rewrite Rules

Using the Rewrite Engine in your Apache or similar options in your web server, its possible to shorten URLs to your information hosted within your TikiWiki.

For example you can put this into the beginning of your Tiki .htaccess file:

```
RewriteEngine On

# direct one-word access
RewriteRule ^articles$      tiki-view_articles.php      [L]
RewriteRule ^blogs$        tiki-list_blogs.php         [L]
RewriteRule ^categories$   tiki-browse_categories.php  [L]
RewriteRule ^charts$       tiki-list_charts.php        [L]
RewriteRule ^chat$         tiki-chat.php               [L]
RewriteRule ^contact$      tiki-contact.php            [L]
RewriteRule ^directories$   tiki-directory_browse.php   [L]
RewriteRule ^eph$          tiki-eph.php                [L]
RewriteRule ^faqs$         tiki-list_faqs.php          [L]
RewriteRule ^files$        tiki-file_galleries.php     [L]
RewriteRule ^forums$       tiki-forums.php             [L]
RewriteRule ^images$       tiki-galleries.php          [L]
RewriteRule ^galleries$   tiki-galleries.php          [L]
RewriteRule ^games$        tiki-list_games.php         [L]
RewriteRule ^my$           tiki-my_tiki.php            [L]
RewriteRule ^newsletters$  tiki-newsletters.php        [L]
RewriteRule ^quizzes$      tiki-list_quizzes.php       [L]
RewriteRule ^stats$        tiki-stats.php              [L]
RewriteRule ^surveys$      tiki-list_surveys.php       [L]
RewriteRule ^trackers$     tiki-list_trackers.php      [L]
RewriteRule ^irc$          tiki-irc_logs.php           [L]
RewriteRule ^mobile$       tiki-mobile.php             [L]
RewriteRule ^wml$          tiki-mobile.php             [L]

# access any object by its numeric identifier
RewriteRule ^article([0-9]+)  tiki-read_article.php?articleId=$1  [QSA,L]
```

```
RewriteRule ^art([0-9]+) tiki-read_article.php?articleId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^cat([0-9]+) tiki-browse_categories.php?parentId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^blog([0-9]+) tiki-view_blog.php?blogId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^chart([0-9]+) tiki-view_chart.php?chartId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^directory([0-9]+) tiki-directory_browse.php?parent=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^eph([0-9]+) tiki-directory_browse.php?parent=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^faq([0-9]+) tiki-view_faq.php?faqId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^file([0-9]+) tiki-list_file_gallery.php?galleryId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^dl([0-9]+) tiki-download_file.php?fileId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^forum([0-9]+) tiki-view_forum.php?forumId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^image([0-9]+) tiki-browse_gallery.php?galleryId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^gallery([0-9]+) tiki-browse_gallery.php?galleryId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^newsletter([0-9]+) tiki-newsletters.php?nlId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^quiz([0-9]+) tiki-take_quiz.php?quizId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^survey([0-9]+) tiki-take_survey.php?surveyId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^tracker([0-9]+) tiki-view_tracker.php?trackerId=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^wiki-([A-Za-z0-9]+) tiki-index.php?page=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^page-([A-Za-z0-9]+) tiki-index.php?page=$1 [QSA,L]
RewriteRule ^irc([0-9]+) tiki-irc_logs.php?focus=$1 [QSA,L]

# access index as empty string after /
RewriteRule ^$ tiki-index.php [QSA,L]

# todo add support for all characters allowed in a Wiki name
# make sure this is the last rule!
RewriteRule ([-_]+A-Za-z0-9+)$ tiki-index.php?page=$1 [QSA,L]
```

## Examples

With Rewrites enabled you can access your articles, wiki pages or any other TikiWiki item using URLs similar to these:

- <http://yourdomain.com/WikiPage> - rewrites to <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-index.php?page=WikiPage>

## ImageMagick Install

# Install ImageMagick

For those that use the image gallery in tiki, note that GD is used by php for image processing. But GDlib comes with some restrictions on file formats, especially regarding GIF use. Support for Image Magick is added now, that offers a wider range of available file formats.




## Install ImageMagick and Libs

Get Image Magick from <http://www.imagemagick.org/www/archives.html> 

- Be sure to install the libraries.
  - On RPM based system (RedHat, Mandrake)  
rpm -q libMagick5  
libMagick5-5.4.8.3-2mdk
  - On APT based system (Debian, Knoppix)  
apt-get -s install imagick

## Install Imagick PEAR Module

Get the PEAR module from <http://pear.php.net/package-info.php?pacid=76> 

- Windows Users can download a dll from [http://php.chregu.tv/php\\_imagick.dll](http://php.chregu.tv/php_imagick.dll)  which has to be placed into /php/extensions, add

```
extension=php_imagick.dll
```

to php.ini, and finally copy all the dll files from ImageMagick installation root directory to /windows/system32.

- Debian sid users have that package : apt-get install php4-imagick
- Other users have to compile it. To compile it, you have to recompile your PHP Get the PHP sources on <http://php.net> , read the INSTALL file from the imagick module and ./configure PHP with --with-imagick

Special Tip :

If your compilation stops, There are 2 Bugs:

- do a "rm ./configure" in your php src directory before performing Step 8 of the INSTALL-file of imagick.
- edit imagick.c (Version 0.95) Line 624 should be "RunlengthEncodedCompression" not "RLECompression", this may depend on your libMagick however your make should tell you the right way. Install your new PHP, restart your webserver. Do a phpinfo() to see if Imagick support is added. If not, you may have forgot to rm ./configure.

## Tikiwiki setting up

In the **Image Galleries Config** select Imagick as **Library to use for processing images**. If PHP is unable to find the PHP Imagick the setting reverts back to GD.


## Useful Links

- Next Version of the PEAR module will work with GraphicsMagick too:  
<http://graphicsmagick.sourceforge.net/>
- 

## GraphViz Install

# Graphviz Install

Graphviz provides a collection of tools for manipulating graph structures and generating graph layouts.

 For those who would like to use **Dynamic SiteMap** graph generation in Tikiwiki, we recommend the Graphviz library and the Wikigraph plugin?



## Install Graphviz and Libs

- On Windows the default installer exe should do all necessary steps.  
Get Graphviz from <http://graphviz.org/pub/graphviz/>.
- On RPM based system (RedHat, Mandrake)  
rpm -q graphviz
- On APT based system (Debian, Knoppix)  
apt-get -s install graphviz
- For Portage users (Gentoo)  
emerge graphviz

## Testing an installed Graphviz Setup

-  Point your browser to [http://127.0.0.1/tiki-wiki\\_graph.php?page=HomePage&level=2](http://127.0.0.1/tiki-wiki_graph.php?page=HomePage&level=2)

## Troubleshooting Hints

-  Graphviz consumes LOTS of memory with even small (no. of wikipages less than 100) wiki content. Try to keep the *Level* of the graph low in order to use wiki pages including dynamic graphs.
-  If you use Windows, copy GraphViz binary files (dot.exe, neato.exe, etc) from the GraphViz bin folder to the windows\system32 or equivalent folder (NaV/system32). The installer should have done this job for you, but we recommend double-checking if you encounter errors. It's not the same to put the exe's in the path, they must be in a Windows system directory.

- In PHP Safemode environments, special adjustments need to be made to use external libraries.
  - These settings will be included here.

### From Here

- 🌱 Take a look at how to use the Wikigraph plugin [?](#).
- 

### Useful Links

- Development home of the Graph Visualization Project  
<http://graphviz.org/> <sup>🔗</sup>
  - GraphVIZ Reference Manual  
<http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/refs.html> <sup>🔗</sup>
  - Download Graphviz  
<http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/download.html> <sup>🔗</sup>
  - Graphviz Source License  
<http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/license/index.html> <sup>🔗</sup>
  - Graphviz Binary License  
<http://www.research.att.com/sw/tools/graphviz/license/binary.html> <sup>🔗</sup>
- 

### TroubleShooting

---

#### Upgrade

Before you upgrade, make sure you have a backup of your sql database

Upgrading Tiki is easy when you have mastered its installation. Basically you install the new version of tikiwiki like if it was a brand new install. Choose a different diirectory as to not overwrite your current site.

On the tiki-install.php page of this "new" site connect to the same database as your current site and run the various sql upgrade scripts. You can run the upgrade scripts several times, they are meant to be not destructive. You may need to run for instance 1.8 to 1.9 then 1.9 to 1.9.1 and so on, if your current site is on 1.8 and want to upgrade to 1.9.1.

Do not run the install sql scripts or you will delete your current database

Proceed as usual to the wiki site while disabling the tiki-install.php script. Check your new web site contains everything from the old web site. Things that you may need to copy from your old site to your new site:

- img/wiki\_up folder content (wiki images)
- some customised tpl
- some customised styles (css)
- some customised wiki-plugins and pages

When you are happy with the result delete the directory structure of the old site and move the directory of the new site in place. In fact on linux you can use a symlink instead, making upgrade easy.

```
ln -s tikiwiki-1.9.1 tiki
```

---

## Configuration

# Configuration

---

## Quick Start

# Quick Start

Here's an overview how to quickstart a Tiki.

## Review of the Tiki Installation

Please review these steps about **installation**:

1. Have a working environment (database server, webserver with php)
2. Download latest official Tiki release
3. Extract into web hosting directory of webserver
4. Create and use database for Tiki in database server
  1. Create tikidatabase
  2. Create tikisqluser, assign tikisqluser password
  3. Assign permissions on tikidatabase to tikisqluser
  4. Edit db/local.php to include: tikisqluser, tikisqluser password, tikidatabase

5. Setup Tiki permissions and folders in web hosting directory - (setup.sh)
6. Open Tiki in web browser: <http://127.0.0.1/tiki-index.php>
7. Login using username **admin** , password **admin**

Now you will be greeted by the default configuration, opening the Wiki features default HomePage.

### From Here

🌿 Take a look at the [Wiki Basics HOWTO?](#) and the [Wiki Linking HOWTO?](#) to get an idea how to create basic pages starting out from editing your <http://127.0.0.1/tiki-index.php?page=HomePage>.

🌿 If you would like to format your content, read [Wiki Formatting HOWTO?](#) or the included [Wiki help?](#)

🌿 To create your own menu in a module and assign it to the columns in Tiki, please read the [Menu HOWTO](#).

🌿 For a quick setup of permissions and features, take a look at [Using profiles](#) or learn to use your custom profile starting from [Permissions Settings](#) and [Features Admin](#) and [Groups Management](#) and [Users Management](#) and [Login Config](#).

🌿 You may also be interested in turning on [Image Galleries](#) or [File Galleries](#) features.

---

### Using profiles

The installer includes options to apply a profile of admin settings. A profile that matches your usual preferred settings will save you time not having to manually go through each admin screen and check/uncheck boxes and such.

## How does one create a profile?

There is a shell script to create one in the doc/devtools directory (only included within CVS checkouts, i.e. .tar.gz files don't have it).

Basically create a blank database, go through your admin settings and then run the script.

---

### Advanced Configuration

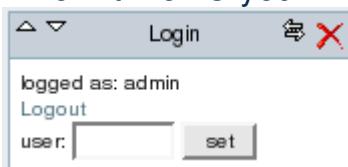
### Module Controls

Module controls are little tools that appear in the top bars of modules, such as the login module. The controls allow a user to modify the layout he sees for the Tiki by moving the modules up and down, from the left column to the right, or vice-versa, or even removing the module entirely.

To activate modules controls in your Tiki you need to complete several steps:

1. Login as admin
2. In tiki-admin.php?page=features
  1. make sure "Show Module Controls" is active.
  2. make sure "Users can Configure Modules" is active.
3. In tiki-admin.php?page=general
  1. make sure "Display modules to all groups always" is active.
4. In tiki-assignpermission.php make sure your users have tiki\_p\_configure\_modules

When it works you will see something like this:



## Features

# Features

TikiWiki is a feature-rich *content management system* (CMS) — it's so feature-rich that it can be overwhelming, even to an experienced user or administrator. Thus, we found it useful to divide TikiWiki's features into these general categories:

- **Content Creation and Management Tools** These features enable administrators and users to create, display, and maintain online-accessible content of all kinds, including text, binary data, images, links, and much more.
- **Content Organization Tools and Navigation Aids** These features enable administrators and users to organize, structure, and present content in a manageable way.
- **Communication Tools?** These features enable administrators and users to communicate with each other (and the outside world) by means of numerous media, including internal messaging, voice telephony, data interchange, and many more.
- **Configuration Tools? and Administration Tools?** These features enable administrators (and users who have been given the appropriate permissions) to configure administer all aspects of a TikiWiki site.

To browse the documentation, click on the links below.

## TIKIWIKI FEATURES

<i>Feature</i>	<i>Typical Application</i>
<b><u>Content Creation and Management Tools</u></b>	
<b><u>Articles</u></b>	Fast-breaking news, announcements
<b><u>Blogs</u></b>	Online diaries or journals
<b><u>Charts</u></b>	Like polls, but more feature-rich; displayed in center column
<b><u>Comments</u></b>	User comments that can be appended to articles, Wiki pages, forum posts, and more
<b><u>Cookies</u></b>	Taglines drawn randomly from tagline database
<b><u>Directory</u></b>	User-submitted Web links
<b><u>Dynamic Content</u></b>	Snippets of text or code that can be incorporated by reference
<b><u>Ephemerides</u></b>	Content that varies by date
<b><u>FAQs</u></b>	Frequently asked questions and answers
<b><u>Featured Links</u></b>	External Web pages that open in an iframe
<b><u>File Galleries</u></b>	Computer files and software for downloading
<b><u>Forums</u></b>	Online discussions on a variety of topics
<b><u>HTML Pages</u></b>	Static and dynamic HTML content
<b><u>Image Galleries</u></b>	Collections of graphic images for viewing or downloading
<b><u>Maps</u></b>	Navigable, interactive maps with user-selectable layers
<b><u>Newsletters</u></b>	Content mailed to registered users
<b><u>Polls</u></b>	Brief list of votable options; appears in module (left or right column)
<b><u>Quizzes</u></b>	Timed questionnaire with recorded scores
<b><u>RSS Feeds</u></b>	Newsfeeds from external Web sites
<b><u>Surveys</u></b>	Questionnaire
<b><u>Trackers</u></b>	Facts and figures storage & retrieval
<b><u>Wiki</u></b>	Collaboratively authored documents
<b><u>Content Organization Tools and Navigation Aids</u></b>	
<b><u>Calendar</u></b>	Show when content was created or modified
<b><u>Categories</u></b>	Classify content according to subject descriptors
<b><u>Content Templates</u></b>	Give a consistent look and feel to Wiki pages.
<b><u>Hotwords</u></b>	Automatically attach links to specified words or phrases.
<b><u>Modules</u></b>	Control appearance and content of boxes that appear in the left and right columns
<b><u>MyTiki</u></b>	Provide content organization and communication tools for registered users
<b><u>Search</u></b>	Provide full-text search capabilities
<b><u>Structures</u></b>	Create hierarchically organized "breadcrumb" navigation aids for Wiki pages
<b><u>UserMenu?</u></b>	Create custom menus to aid site navigation
<b><u>Workflow</u></b>	Control routing of documents based on objectively defined actions.
<b><u>Communication Tools?</u></b>	
<b><u>Chat</u></b>	Real-time text chatting
<b><u>Communication Center?</u></b>	Exchange data with other TikiWiki sites
<b><u>Live Support</u></b>	Notify admin by e-mail when a user needs help.
<b><u>Mail-In</u></b>	Submit Wiki pages via e-mail.
<b><u>Messaging?</u></b>	Enable users to send internal messages to each other
<b><u>Mobile Tiki</u></b>	Make a TikiWiki site accessible to users of Web-enabled cell phones.
<b><u>Shoutbox</u></b>	Provide a "graffiti" box on the site's home page.
<b><u>Tikibot</u></b>	Respond to data queries originated via IRC.
<b><u>Voice Tiki</u></b>	Provide voice-based browsing capability.
<b><u>Webmail</u></b>	Give users Web-based access to their POP3 e-mail accounts
<b><u>Configuration Tools?</u></b>	
<b><u>Articles Config</u></b>	Configure Articles features.
<b><u>Blogs Config</u></b>	Configure Blogs features.

<a href="#">Directory Config?</a>	Configure Directory feature.
<a href="#">FAQs Config?</a>	Configure FAQs feature.
<a href="#">Features Config?</a>	Enable or disable TikiWiki features.
<a href="#"><b><u>File Galleries Config</u></b></a>	Configure File Galleries feature.
<a href="#">Forums Config?</a>	Configure Forums feature.
<a href="#">General Config?</a>	Set up, name, and configure a TikiWiki site.
<a href="#"><b><u>Image Galleries Config</u></b></a>	Configure Image Galleries feature.
<a href="#"><b><u>Login Config</u></b></a>	Control user login processes.
<a href="#"><b><u>Maps Config</u></b></a>	Configure Maps feature.
<a href="#">Polls Config?</a>	Configure Polls feature.
<a href="#"><b><u>RSS Config</u></b></a>	Configure RSS Feeds feature.
<a href="#"><b><u>RSS Config</u></b></a>	Configure RSS Feeds feature.
<a href="#">Trackers Config?</a>	Configure Trackers feature.
<a href="#">User Files Config?</a>	Establish quotas for user files.
<a href="#">Webmail Config?</a>	Set up Webmail accounts.
<a href="#"><b><u>Wiki Config</u></b></a>	Configure Wiki features.
<a href="#"><b><u>Administration Tools?</u></b></a>	
<a href="#">Admin Drawings?</a>	Set up drawing tools for Wiki pages.
<a href="#"><b><u>Admin DSN</u></b></a>	Create links to external databases.
<a href="#"><b><u>Backups</u></b></a>	Make dumps of TikiWiki's SQL database.
<a href="#"><b><u>Banners</u></b></a>	Insert, track, and manage advertising banners.
<a href="#"><b><u>Banning</u></b></a>	Block access from individual IPs or ranges of IPs.
<a href="#"><b><u>Cache</u></b></a>	Control and flush cached data.
<a href="#"><b><u>Edit Templates</u></b></a>	Edit SMARTY templates.
<a href="#"><b><u>External Wikis</u></b></a>	Enable direct links to external Wikis.
<a href="#">Groups?</a>	Manage user groups.
<a href="#"><b><u>Import PHPWiki</u></b></a>	Import data from a PHPWiki site.
<a href="#"><b><u>Integrator</u></b></a>	Automatically import external HTML pages into the Wiki.
<a href="#"><b><u>Phpinfo</u></b></a>	View PHP information on the server.
<a href="#">QuickTags?</a>	Define QuickTags for inserting Wiki syntax.
<a href="#">Referrer Stats?</a>	View referrer stats.
<a href="#">Search Stats?</a>	View search stats.
<a href="#"><b><u>Stats</u></b></a>	View site stats.
<a href="#"><b><u>Theme Control</u></b></a>	Assign different themes to various TikiWiki components.
<a href="#">Users?</a>	Manage registered users.

## From Here

- If you're a TikiWiki user (or a would-be administrator trying to get a handle on what TikiWiki can do), start with **[Content Creation and Management Tools](#)**.
- Advanced users and administrators can explore **[Content Organization Tools and Navigation Aids](#)** to learn how to improve a TikiWiki site's accessibility and usability.
- Learn about the many ways TikiWiki can facilitate communication by browsing **[Communication Tools?](#)**
- If you're a TikiWiki administrator, or a user tapped by an administrator to help out with administrative duties, you can learn more about the many **[Administration Tools?](#)**



## Wiki

# Wiki

At the heart of TikiWiki is the Wiki feature, which enables users to create and edit a virtually unlimited number of content pages, even if they don't know any HTML. On the surface, the Wiki feature can be thought of as an exceptionally easy-to-use tool for adding content to a TikiWiki-powered Web site — but this view understates this feature's significance. Wikis are, put simply, perhaps the most useful tool yet created for online teamwork and collaboration. There are several standalone Wiki server packages available (see "Useful Links," below); TikiWiki's Wiki feature is among the most feature-rich and stable available, and what is more, gives you a wide range of additional ways of organizing and looking at collaboratively developed data (including forums, articles, and blogs).

To grasp the nature and utility of TikiWiki's Wiki feature, you'll need to understand the simple (but important) design philosophy that underlies all Wiki software (see "Understanding Wikis," below). Then take a look at "Feature Overview," also below, for a birds-eye scan of the many capabilities of TikiWiki's implementation of the underlying Wiki concept.

## Understanding Wikis

In brief, a *Wiki* is a computer-based collaboration system based on three major principles:

- **Ease of Use** Users shouldn't have to learn HTML or deal with complicated file upload/download protocols, and the inevitable file format incompatibilities, in order to create and maintain documents collaboratively. Typically, wikis solve these problems by using their own, easy formatting syntax (called *wiki syntax*) and by enabling users to create and maintain documents with a Web browser.
- **Wide-Open Read/Write Access** If the purpose of a wiki is wide-open collaboration, then *every document in the wiki* should be instantly available for editing and revision — and what's more, anyone should be able to edit an existing wiki document (or create a new one) without having to get permission from authors or supervisors.
- **Emergent Structure** In physics and biology, the term *emergent structure* is used to describe the striking (and often beautiful) patterns that emerge from fundamentally chaotic processes, such as the spiral arms of our galaxy. In a Wiki, this term refers to the navigation structures that Wiki users invent as they try to impose pattern and meaning on a collection of Wiki pages.

Few would debate that online collaborative tools should be easier to use, but the second of these two principles — "Wide-Open Read/Write Access" — sounds risky to most people. But don't get scared off just yet. In TikiWiki (as in most other leading wiki packages), you don't have to throw open your Wiki pages to the whole, wild Internet. You can:

- **Use Permissions** Restrict Wiki page-editing rights to registered users, or to more narrowly defined user groups, or to forbid page editing entirely, if you wish.
- **Lock Pages** Any individual Wiki page can be locked by the site admin or page author so that the content can't be altered.
- **Monitor Important Pages** You can monitor a page, which means that you're notified (via e-mail) whenever a change is made.
- **Restore from Page Histories** If someone messes up a page, not to worry. TikiWiki (again, like most Wiki packages) keeps a detailed history of all the changes made to a given page. Previous versions can be quickly restored — typically, in less than one minute — without having to fuss with backup tapes.

Don't let the wide-open read/write access philosophy scare you off. Throughout the world, leading corporations and universities are quietly using Wiki software to facilitate team-based, collaborative writing — and they're reporting success after success. To be sure, authors need to know what they're getting into; after all, someone might come along and make changes to the "brilliant page" they just posted. (Of course, the original author can go back in and remove the changes, but it would be much better to revise the page to show that there are differing points of view!) To avoid ego-related squabbles, TikiWiki administrators need to explain the Wiki philosophy to team members (and provide plenty of tools that enable users to work through conflicts regarding page content).

**Historical Note** The term *Wiki* is short for *wiki-wiki*, which means *quick* in Hawaiian. The first Wiki was created (and dubbed "Wiki-Wiki") by Ward Cunningham, a Portland, OR computer programmer, in 1995. The largest Wiki is the remarkable Wikipedia, which now contains more than 300,000 publicly-contributed entries.

## Feature Overview

TikiWiki's Wiki feature enables users as well as admins to create virtually limitless numbers of readable, Web-accessible pages without the need to learn HTML or master complicated file uploading protocols. No matter who originally created a given Wiki page, it is almost instantly accessible for editing, providing the user has the appropriate permissions and the page has not been locked.

When a Wiki page is opened for editing, authors can make use of Wiki Syntax [?](#), a set of formatting codes that is designed for maximum ease of use. If they have the appropriate permissions, they can also use HTML. Even if they use no formatting at

all, the saved page will still look pretty much as the author intended — TikiWiki reproduces carriage returns and blank lines the way they look in the textarea input box. Optionally, Wiki pages can include graphics, and users (with the appropriate permissions) can attach files of any type. Users can include three types of links in Wiki pages: links to other Wiki pages within the same TikiWiki site, links to external Wikis, and Web links (see [Wiki Linking?](#)). Users can also draw from a large and growing list of [Wiki Plugins?](#), which provide a variety of enhancements (including split-page formats, a Jabber client, automatically included article text, and many more). They can also categorize pages using **Categories**, if these have been enabled and previously created by the site's administrator.

When a saved page is displayed, users (assuming they have the appropriate permissions) can save the page to their local systems, export the page to a PDF file, view the page in a format suitable for printing, or save the page to their MyTiki notepad. They can also monitor the page, which means that they'll receive e-mail if a change is made to the page. They can view the page's history, including previous versions of the page and differences among the various versions. They can see an automatically generated list of similar pages, as well as a list of pages (called *backlinks*) that contain links to the current page.

From Here

- 

Further Reading

- Wikipedia  
<http://wikipedia.org> <sup>↗</sup>
- Wiki entry at Wikipedia  
<http://en2.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki> <sup>↗</sup>
- Wiki Design Principles  
<http://c2.com/cgi/wiki?WikiDesignPrinciples> <sup>↗</sup>
- Wiki RFC  
<http://tikiwiki.org/RFCWiki> <sup>↗</sup>

---

Using Wiki Pages

## Using Wiki Pages

To understand what a Wiki page is and how they work, please read the [Wiki](#) page. Depending on how the TikiWiki administrator has configured the TikiWiki site you're

using, you may be able to do some or all of the following:

- Create new pages
- Edit existing pages
- Read pages
- Add Comments to pages
- Find Similar pages
- See what is hot and what is not
- Much, much more

The following sections explain how to do this.

- **Using Wiki Pages**
  - **The Wiki Menu**
  - **A Wiki Page**
  - **Creating a Wiki Page**
  - **Last Changes**
  - **Wiki Rankings**
  - **Page History**
  - **Similar Pages**
  - **Undo Edit**
  - **Page Export**
  - **Page Comment**
  - **Page Renaming**
  - **List Pages**
  - **Backlinks & Orphan Pages**
  - **The Sandbox**
  - **Page Monitoring**
  - **Page Permissions**
  - **Show Modules in Wiki Page**
  - **Other Syntax Pages**

## The Wiki Menu

The following image is the menu that most users will see if all options are activated.

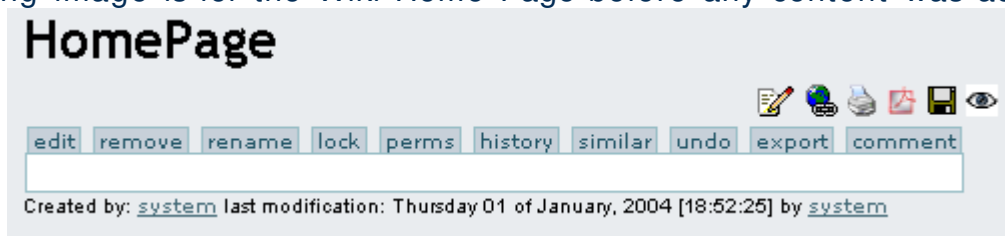


The options are as follows:

- **Wiki** the Wiki Home page is viewed. See **A Wiki Page** below
- **Wiki Home** the Wiki Home page is viewed. See **A Wiki Page** below
- **Last Changes** this allows the user to see which pages have changed. See **Last Changes** below
- **Dump** this allows the user to create a compressed file from the page
- **Rankings** this will show which pages are hot or how much activity they have had. See **Wiki Rankings** below
- **List Pages** this provides a complete listing of all pages in the site. See **List Pages** below
- **Orphan Pages** pages do get orphaned with time - that is - the links to them are removed. This option provides a way to find them. See **Backlinks & Orphan Pages** below
- **Sandbox** this is a safe place to experiment with Wiki Syntax or HTML. See **The Sandbox** below
- **Print** this allows multiple pages to be printed. See **Wiki Printing** below
- **Structures** (not shown in the image) are visible to anyone with Admin privileges. Structures are a way of applying an order to Wiki pages, like building a directory tree.

## A Wiki Page

The following image is for the Wiki Home Page before any content was added to it.









The buttons across the top have the following meaning:

- **Edit Button** this opens the Wiki Page editor for this page. See the **Wiki Page Editor** page
- **Remove Button** this allows a Wiki page to be deleted. **NOTE:** A deleted page can be recovered by admin.
- **Rename Button** this allows the page to be renamed. See **Page Renaming** below
- **Lock/Unlock Button** a page can be locked to prevent it from being edited. If this is done, only the Author (if enabled) or Admin will be able to unlock it.
- **Perms Button** Group Permissions can be assigned to a page. See **Page Permissions** below
- **History Button** this provides a detailed History of the page. See **Page History** below
- **Similar Button** this is a search facility for finding similar pages. See **Similar Pages** below

- **Undo Button** this will undo the last edit. See **Undo Edit** below
- **Export Button** this allows the page to be exported to a text file on your system. See **Page Export** below
- **Comment Button** users can add comments to a page. See **Page Comment** below

The Icons at the top have the following meaning:

-  Opens the editor for this page. See the [Wiki Page Editor](#) page
-  Provides a listing of every page that references this page. See **Backlinks & Orphan Pages** below
-  This will display a printer-friendly version of the page by removing menus, sidebars, banners and anything else except the central column.
-  Will create an Adobe PDF file from the current page.
-  Creates a copy of the page and saves it to your **Notepad** in the MyTiki section. See [User Notepad](#)
-  Allows the page to be monitored. When a change is made to the page, an email is automatically sent to every user who is monitoring the page. See **Page Notification** below

## Creating a Wiki Page

If configured, Wiki pages can be created using Smashed Word syntax. This can be defined as a number of capitalized words joined together without spaces like **MaryHadALittleLamb** . Alternately, a user can specifically tell the system to create a page like this **((This is a New Page))** . In either case, when the page is saved the Wiki will add a question mark to indicate a new page. The question mark is a link to the Wiki page editor for that page. After the new page is saved, the question mark is replaced from the original page and the link will be indicated.

TIP: A Fast Way to Create a New Wiki Page

- Edit **ANY** Wiki Page
- Somewhere at the top of the page, add the name of the page you want to create in double parentheses. Example: ((My New Page))
- Hit Preview
- Select the underlined Question Mark. Example: My New Page?

You will be editing the page you wanted to create. The page that you changed to create this page was not saved or updated - so it does not need to be modified or repaired. This method allows you to see if the page already exists. A link will be displayed if a page with that name exists (instead of the question mark) so you can change the page's name and hit Preview again.

## Last Changes

This screen allows you to see which Wiki pages have changed. The buttons across the top specify how far back to search for changes and the find box allows you to search for changes on specific pages.

Date	Page	Action	User	Ip	Comment
Mon 15 of Dec, 2003 [05:18 UTC]	<b>EditingExamples</b> ( <a href="#">hist</a> ) <a href="#">v</a> <a href="#">b</a> <a href="#">c</a> <a href="#">d</a> <a href="#">s</a>	Updated	StarRider	68.93.56.176	
Mon 15 of Dec, 2003 [05:13 UTC]	<b>EditingExamples</b> ( <a href="#">hist</a> ) <a href="#">v</a> <a href="#">b</a> <a href="#">c</a> <a href="#">d</a> <a href="#">s</a>	Updated	StarRider	68.93.56.176	

Page: 1/1

As you can see, the date of each change, the page name, who made the change and his IP address are recorded. Under each of the page names are 6 links. They are explained as follows:

- **(hist)** provides a detailed History of the changes made to this page. See **Page History**
- **v** View will show the page as it was when that change was made
- **b** Back or Rollback is used to revert a page to a given version. Confirmation is asked before the page is rolled back to a previous version. Another alternative is to remove all the versions that you don't like until the desired version becomes the current one.
- **c** Compare shows a side-by-side comparison between the selected version and the current version.
- **d** The Difference tool computes a difference between the current version and any selected version in the history. Some people prefer the Difference tool while others prefer the Comparison tool, you can use whatever you want or both.
- **s** Displays the Source code of the selected version. This is nearly identical to what is seen in the Wiki Page Editor.



## Wiki Rankings

## Page History

**History** of: **EditingExamples**

del	Date	Ver	User	Ip	Comment	Action
	Mon 15 of Dec, 2003 [06:13 UTC]	113	StarRider	68.93.56.176		<a href="#">current</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sun 14 of Dec, 2003 [17:48 UTC]	108	StarRider	68.93.56.176		<a href="#">v</a> <a href="#">b</a> <a href="#">e</a> <a href="#">d</a> <a href="#">s</a>

[edit](#) [remove](#) [rename](#) [lock](#) [perms](#) [history](#) [similar](#) [export](#) [discuss](#)

## Similar Pages

Similar Pages show a listing of pages with named similar to the current page. Pages are created and named using words combined together, so Similar Pages will show pages where one more of these words are the same as the words in the current pages. As an example MyPage, NFLResultsPage OpinionsPage are similar because they share the word Page

## Undo Edit

The Undo button can be used to Undo the last edition of a page. If the Undo feature is enabled then a user that can edit pages will be able to Undo what they did even if they can't Rollback pages or Remove page versions.

Pressing the undo button removes the current version of the page making the last version in the history the current page; if no version is in the history then the page is reverted to an empty page.

**Note:** A users will only be able to Undo their editing and not the editing that any other user has done unless the user has permission to remove page versions.

## Page Export

The Export button can be used to export the current version of the page. When clicked your browser will prompt you to save the file. The exported page can then be edited and later be imported back into the Wiki. You can also export all the versions of a page. This link is inside the Page Editor.

## Page Comment



## Page Renaming

The Rename button can be used to rename a Wiki page; all wiki links referencing the page will be updated as well. An error message will be generated if the new page name is already in use.

**Note:** A user must have a permission to rename pages.

## List Pages

### Backlinks & Orphan Pages

Every page has a list of Backlinks. Backlinks are links from any page to the current page (the page you are reading), you can use the Backlinks option to see which pages are linking to a particular page and find Orphan pages (pages with no Backlinks). Orphan pages are unlikely to get visited very often. On many occasions, Orphan pages are old pages that were removed from the Wiki and should have been deleted.

### The Sandbox

Like a real Sandbox, in TikiWiki – the Sandbox is a place to play. You can test out ideas here, experiment with Wiki Syntax or HTML safely. The contents of the Sandbox are never saved, so when you have something perfected - copy the contents and paste them into a Wiki page.

### Page Monitoring

Page monitoring allows a registered user to receive an email when ever there is an edit or new comment applied to a a wiki page. Logged in users can click the monitor button at the top of a wiki page to turn monitoring on or off per a page.

### Page Permissions

NOTE: in TikiWiki 1.9 permissions can be applied to an entire wiki structure.

Users in a group with permissions tiki\_p\_admin\_wiki can set permissions per a page. Click **perms** and then select the permissions you wish to apply for what user groups to that page. If no individual permissions are applied to a page, global permissions apply.

As soon as one permission is applied, all global permissions are overridden and thus you will probably have to apply a few individual permissions so one or more user groups can view and edit the page.

### Show Modules in Wiki Page

**Modules** are usually displayed on the left or right columns. To display a module in a

wiki page, use the syntax:

```
{MODULE(module=>module_name_here)}{MODULE}
```

---

## Other Syntax Pages

---

### Wiki-Syntax Links

- [Wiki-Syntax Links](#)
  - [Quick Reference](#)
  - [Linking to Wiki Pages](#)
  - [Linking to External Wiki Pages](#)
  - [Linking to Web Pages](#)
  - [Linking to Email Addresses](#)
- [tiki-admin\\_external\\_wikis.php](#)

# Wiki-Syntax Links

In this page, you'll learn how to include links in your [Wiki](#) pages, including links to other Wiki pages within the same TikiWiki site, links to an external Wiki site, and links to the Web.

- [Wiki-Syntax Links](#)
  - [Quick Reference](#)
  - [Linking to Wiki Pages](#)
  - [Linking to External Wiki Pages](#)
  - [Linking to Web Pages](#)
  - [Linking to Email Addresses](#)
- [tiki-admin\\_external\\_wikis.php](#)

## Quick Reference

Link to a Wiki page	<code>WikiPageName</code> or <code>((Wiki Page Name))</code>
Link to an external Wiki page	<code>ExternalWikiName:ExternalWikiPageName</code> or <code>((External Wiki Name: External Wiki Page Name))</code>
Link to a Web page	<code>[http://www.somesite.org]</code> or <code>[http://www.somesite.org  Some Site!]</code>

**Note:** Tiki's linking capabilities are affected by the following administrative options:

- **Use WikiWords** If this feature in the Wiki Features area (Wiki tab) is disabled, you must use doubled parentheses to create a Wiki page link.
- **Open External Links in New Window** If this feature in the General Settings area (General tab) is disabled, external links open in the existing browser window.

### Linking to Wiki Pages

Wikis are designed to detect Wiki page names automatically and to format them as hyperlinks, which can be clicked to display the linked page. Either of the following is a valid Wiki page name:

- **TheWikiWay** Two or more words are stuck together (no spaces, but accept - and \_), and each is capitalized.
- **((The Wiki Way))** This method is used to refer to Wiki page names that include spaces.

If you would like to add a description, type the link like this:

- `((TheWikiWay|The Wiki Way))`

Be sure to include the vertical bar character (|).

When you add a description, the Wiki page will show the description text as a clickable link.

### Help!

- If you save the page but see a question mark after the page name, and you're sure the page exists, search for the page in the Search module to make sure you've typed the name correctly.
- Sometimes the Wiki software mistakenly thinks a word with odd capitalization is a Wiki page name. It places a question mark after the word to indicate that it cannot find a page with that name. To keep the Wiki software from formatting a word as a Wiki page name, surround the word with doubled, reversed parentheses, as in the following example:

`))WordStar((.`

## Linking to External Wiki Pages

If your administrator has enabled this option (see InterWiki for admin setup instructions), you can link to pages in an external Wiki. You'll need to know the name of the external Wiki in order to use this feature.

To link to an external Wiki page, type the link using the following pattern

- ((Name of external Wiki:Name of page in external Wiki))

To link to this page, you'd type the following (this example assumes that your administrator had defined an external Wiki link and named it 'Tikiwiki'):

- ((Tikiwiki:WikiLinkingDoc))

Ask your administrator whether any external Wikis have been defined and named.

## Linking to Web Pages

You can link to any page on the Web that has a valid URL. By default, Tiki creates a local cache of the page so that it will be available even if the remote Web site is down. In addition, Tiki opens external Web pages in a new browser window. (See WikiLinkingAdmin<sup>?</sup> for information on changing these administrative options.)

To link to a Web page, enclose the URL within square brackets, as in the following example:

- [http://www.virginia.edu]

The link looks like this: <http://www.virginia.edu>.

The Wiki page will display the link text (http://www.virginia.edu) as a clickable link.

If you would like to add a description, type the link like this:

- [http://www.virginia.edu|University of Virginia]

The Wiki page will display the description (University of Virginia) as a clickable link.

**Important** : If you are linking to a PDF file, a multimedia file, or any file other than an HTML page, please include the *nocache* directive, as in the following examples:

- [http://www.somesite.org/docs/chapter1.pdf |nocache]
- [http://www.somesite.org/docs/chapter1.pdf|Chapter One|nocache]

## Help!

- If the link doesn't work, try copying the URL into your browser window, and click Enter. If the page exists, go back and check your typing. Chances are you'll find that you've made a typing error. Did you type both brackets correctly?

### Linking to Email Addresses

To link to an Email Address, enclose the *mailto* URL within square brackets, as in the following examples:

- [mailto:johndoe@someplace.com]

The link looks like this: [mailto:johndoe@someplace.com](#)

- [mailto:johndoe@someplace.com | John Doe]

The link looks like this: [John Doe](#)

# tiki-admin\_external\_wikis.php

External Wiki Linking

## Admin external wikis


To create a wiki link tag between wikis try this linking to Wikipedia.

## Create/Edit External Wiki

name:	<input type="text" value="wp"/>
URL (use \$page to be replaced by the page name in the URL example: http://www.example.com/tiki-index.php?page=\$page):	<input type="text" value="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/\$page"/>
	<input type="button" value="Save"/>

## External Wiki

Any wikipedia page can then be linked like this ((wp:Wikipedia Page))

name	extwiki	action
wp	http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/\$page	 

Page: 1/1


## Wiki-Syntax Lists

# Wiki-Syntax Lists

In Wiki pages and other contexts that support Wiki formatting (including articles, forums, and blogs), you can easily create bulleted, numbered, and definition lists. In numbered lists, Tiki numbers the items automatically. You can also create nested lists. The following sections explain the details; see the Quick Reference for an overview. Scroll down to Help! if something goes wrong.

## Quick Reference

*	Bulleted list
#	Numbered list
<code>;term:definition</code>	Definition list

 If you forget which character to use while you're editing, click the **Wiki Quick Help** tab.

## Creating a Bulleted List

If you type an asterisk (\*) at the beginning of a line, Tiki places a bullet (a black dot) at the beginning of the line. The line is indented and formatted with a hanging indent, so that second and subsequent lines are indented and aligned with the first line.

To create a bulleted list, do the following:

1. Place the insertion point at the *beginning* of the line.
2. Type an asterisk.
3. Type the item's text.
4. Press Enter.

Example :

- I put an asterisk at the beginning of this line
- And on the second too
- and on the third
- And you can see all the lines aligned.

## Creating a Numbered List

If you type a hash mark (#) at the beginning of a line, Tiki numbers the line and indents it from the left margin. The item's text is formatted with a hanging indent, so that second and subsequent lines are indented and aligned with the first line.

To create a numbered list, do the following:

1. Place the insertion point at the *beginning* of the line.
2. Type a hash mark. Tiki supplies the period automatically.
3. Type the item's text.
4. Do one of the following:
  1. To continue typing items, press Enter once, and go to Step 2, above.
  2. To stop typing the list, press Enter twice.

⚠ If you place more than one numbered list in a page, the items are separately numbered.

### Creating a Nested List

A *nested list* is a bulleted or numbered list that has more than one level — that is, some items have "sub-items," as in the following example:

- This is a Level 1 item.
- This is another Level 1 item
  - This is a Level 2 item.
- Yet another Level 1 item.
  - This is a Level 2 item.
    - Sub-items can have their own sub-items! This is Level 3.
- Back to Level 1.

👓 In a bulleted list, you can create additional sub-levels beyond the third level, but Tiki doesn't use distinctive bullets beyond Level 3.

Here's a numbered list with nested levels:

1. This is a Level 1 item.
2. This is another Level 1 item
  1. This is a Level 2 item.
3. Yet another Level 1 item.
  1. This is a Level 2 item.
  2. Another Level 2 item. Note the numbering.
    1. Sub-items can have their own sub-items! This is Level 3.
4. Back to Level 1.

To create a nested list, type two or more asterisks (bulleted lists) or hash marks (numbered lists) at the beginning of the line, as shown in the following examples:

- \*Level 1 (bulleted list)
- \*\*Level 2 (bulleted list)
- \*\*\*Level 3 (bulleted list)

#Level 1 (numbered list)  
##Level 2 (numbered list)  
###Level 3 (numbered list)

👁 You can create deeper levels of nesting, but doing so might prove confusing to your readers.

👁 You can combine bulleted and numbered list items. Try it!

### Adding Hidden Details

An expandable area allows you to display the major items in your list by default. Every item is still there, but it needs to be expanded to become visible. An expandable area is created by adding a minus - character after the star \* characters.

- This is a Level 1 item.
- This Level 1 item has Hidden Details. Click the Plus [+]  
[+] to open it.
  - This is a Level 2 item. Clicking the Minus [-] will close it.
  - This Level 2 item did not need the minus character.
- Back to Level 1.

👁 Expandable areas work with Bulleted and Numbered lists.

### Text Continuation

Text can be forced to continue at the same indentation level in a list without having a bullet or a Number assigned to it. This is accomplished by having a Plus + character start each line. The number of Plus characters controls the indentation level.

- This is a Level 1 item.  
This line begins with a single Plus character
  - This is a Level 2 item.  
This line begins with a 2 Plus characters
- Back to Level 1.

👁 Expandable areas work with Bulleted and Numbered lists.

### Creating a Definition List

A *definition list* displays a term that is aligned flush left; the term's definition is positioned on the subsequent line and indented. Here's an example:

unordered list

A list in which the order of the items is unimportant; also called a bulleted list.



To create a definition list, do the following:

1. At the beginning of a line, type a semicolon (;).
2. Type the term to be defined.
3. Type a colon (:).
4. Type the definition.
  - Your line should look like this: `;term:definition`
5. Press Enter.
6. Do one of the following:
  - To type another item, go to Step 2, above.
  - To end the list, press Enter again.

⚠ Better definition lists can be created using the DL plugin.

---

## Wiki-Syntax Images

# Wiki-Syntax Images

On this page, you'll learn how to add images to Wiki pages and any other area that support **Wiki** formatting including: Articles, Forums, and Blogs. The images can come from a variety of sources including: images that you upload, images stored in image galleries, images located on the site you are using, and images located on any other site. The Quick Reference show the syntax needed to display a image.

- **Wiki-Syntax Images**
  - **Quick Reference**
  - **Displaying Images**
  - **Uploading Images**
  - **Images From an Image Gallery**
  - **Images From Another Site**

## Quick Reference

<b>Syntax</b>	{img src= width= height= align= desc= link= }	
<b>src=</b>	The name and location of the image	Mandatory
<b>width=</b>	The width of the displayed image	Optional
<b>height=</b>	The height of the displayed image	Optional
<b>align=</b>	Alignment on the page - right, left, or center	Optional
<b>desc=</b>	A text description of the image	Optional
<b>link=</b>	A valid URL to make the image link to that URL	Optional

## Displaying Images

The syntax for displaying an image can be located in anywhere in the text.

- The **src=** statement is the most important part of the syntax. It provides not only the location of the file but the type of image file as well. Tiki handles several image formats including: .BMP, JPG, JIF, PNG
- The **width=** and **height=** variables are in pixels. See Note.
- The **align=** statement can be right, left, or center. Text will automatically wrap around the image.
- The **desc=** statement allows for a descriptive text to be added to the image. The text will be displayed when the mouse hovers over the image.
- The **link=** statement needs a valid URL and allows the image to function as a browser redirect.

**Note:** If an image is used and the size of it is unknown, display the image first. Hover the cursor over the image and do a Right Mouse Button / Properties. This will provide the image size so you can scale it to whatever you desire.

## Uploading Images

Images that are on your system (and only those) can be uploaded using the **Upload Picture** box in the page editor. As soon as the page is saved, a line is added at the bottom of the page that will display the image. It can then be moved where desired by re-editing the page. The image shown at the bottom of this page was uploaded in this manner and looks like this:

```
{picture file=img/wiki_up/Aardvark.PNG}
```

Uploaded image files are always saved in the **img/wiki\_up** directory.

**Note:** Uploaded images do not use the same syntax that was given above. With this syntax, you are not allowed to specify the size of the images or anything else. To do that, use the standard syntax like this:

```
{img src=img/wiki_up/Aardvark.PNG}
```

**Note:** This feature is controlled by the administrative options:

- **Pictures** feature which is set in [Wiki Config](#) page
- tiki\_p\_upload\_pictures permission

## Images From an Image Gallery

Images stored in one of the Image gallery can be displayed on Wiki pages. The following is an example of the message given at the bottom of an Image when it is selected.

You can view this image in your browser using: [http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-browse\\_image.php?imageId=72](http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-browse_image.php?imageId=72)

You can include the image in an HTML or Tiki page using ``

Not all of the second line is needed. The name of the site can be omitted because it

already knows where it is. The following image is displayed with this statement:  
`{img src=show_image.php?id=72 /}`



**Please Note:** That there are no Quotation Marks included in this statement!

### Images From Another Site

The source (**src=**) is a location. That includes a URL of an image on another site. When a URL is used, Tiki will automatically capture the image and store it in the database and update the link so that it points to that image. This allows images to be maintained on the pages even if they are removed from the remote servers that originally had them.

**Note:** This feature is controlled by the administrative option:

- **tiki\_XXXXXXXX** which is set in the Wiki Features area (Wiki tab) under XXXXXXX.

### Usefull Links

This table shows where image files are located on a Tiki site. It gives the directory, a brief description of the files, the number of files in that directory and a link to a page where the files can be viewed.

Directory	Description	Qty	:: Link
images	Most of the Icons used in Tiki	68	<a href="#">Directory Images Files</a>
img	Backgrounds & Logos	24	<a href="#">Directory Img Files</a>
img/avatars	Users Avatars	580	<a href="#">Directory Img-Avatars Files</a>
img/custom	Images for Articles, Blogs, Files Etc.	27	<a href="#">Directory Img-Custom Files</a>
img/flags	Flag from Everywhere	X	<a href="#">Directory Img-Flags Files</a>
img/icn	Icons for File Types	33	<a href="#">Directory Img-Icn Files</a>
img/icons	A Variety of Small Icons	234	<a href="#">Directory Img-Icons Files</a>
img/icons2	More Small Icons	147	<a href="#">Directory Img-Icons2 Files</a>
img/mytiki	Icons used in My-Tiki	14	<a href="#">Directory Img-MyTiki Files</a>
img/smiles	Smiles used Everywhere	23	<a href="#">Directory Img-Smiles Files</a>
img/tiki	Tiki Icons	4	<a href="#">Directory Img-Tiki Files</a>
img/webmail	Icons used in WebMail	13	<a href="#">Directory Img-WebMail Files</a>
Dir Too Long	ADODB Icons	4	<a href="#">Directory Lib-Adodb Files</a>
Dir Too Long	More Small Icons	130	<a href="#">Directory Lib-Galaxia Files</a>
lib/jHotDraw	Various Drawing Buttons	51	<a href="#">Directory Lib-jHotDraw Files</a>
Dir Too Long	X	19	<a href="#">Directory Lib-TikiHelp Files</a>

This image was uploaded using the Upload Picture box in the page editor.picture not

found img/wiki\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//Aardvark.PNG

---

## Wiki-Syntax Text

# Wiki-Syntax Text

On this page, you'll learn how to format text on Wiki pages and other area that support **Wiki** formatting (including articles, forums, and blogs).

The wiki syntax is not standardised accross applications. There is an initiative to publish the Wiki-Syntax as an RFC from the [IETF](#). See [RFCWiki](#).

## The Markup Language Wiki-Syntax

The markup language used on a Wiki page is commonly called Wiki-Syntax. It uses common characters in uncommon ways (or character combinations that are not normally used together) and provides them with a special meaning. Some of the character combinations only work at the beginning of a line, while others can be inserted anywhere in the text and are active until they are turned off.

Wiki-Syntax uses a character repeated twice for most functions, but it also has a few 2-character combinations. With a 2-character combination, the characters are reversed when the function is turned off. MonoSpaced Text provides a good example of this; the Minus (-) and Plus (+) characters are used to start the using MonoSpaced Text and a Plus (+) and Minus (-) characters specifies the end of it.

The following sections explain most of this.

- [Wiki-Syntax Text](#)
  - [The Markup Language Wiki-Syntax](#)
  - [Quick Reference - Basic Text Formatting](#)
  - [Basic Text Formatting](#)
    - [Colored Text](#)
    - [Web-Safe HTML Colors \(Click the + to Open\)](#)
    - [Bold Text](#)
    - [Italic Text](#)
    - [Underlined Text](#)
    - [Centered Text](#)
    - [Monospaced Text for Code](#)
    - [Text box](#)
    - [Indent](#)
  - [Using Square Brackets](#)
  - [Non-breaking space](#)

## Quick Reference - Basic Text Formatting

Formatting Reason	Characters Used	Example
Bold Text	2 Underscores "_"	<u>text</u>
Centered Text	2 Colons ":"	::text::
Colored Text	2 Tildes "~"	~~blue:text~~
Italic Text	2 Single Quotes "'"	"text"
MonoSpaced Text	Minus & Plus "-" & "+"	-+text+-
Underlined Text	3 Equals "="	===text===
Text Box	One carat "^"	^text^

## Basic Text Formatting

The Wiki-Syntax given in this section can be located anywhere in the text so that specific characters, words, or sentences can be emphasized.

### Colored Text

Text can be any color you want it to be. Two Tildes (~) are used followed by the name of a color and a Colon (:) to specify the start of the Colored Text. Two other Tildes (~) are used to end the Colored Text.

Example: `~~red:`This is text is Red`~~` produces:

**This is text is Red**

Colored Text can also be specified using HTML colors. HTML colors use 3 pairs of Hex numbers; one for Red, Blue, & Green so that 00 00 00 would produce white. The syntax is two Tildes (~) followed by the Pound (#) character and the Hex Numbers with a Colon (:) followed by the text to be colored. Two Tildes (~) mark the end of the Colored Text.

Example: `~~#ff00ff:`This is text is the color Magenta `~~` produces:

**This is text is the color Magenta**

### Web-Safe HTML Colors (Click the to Open)

**[+]**

### Courtesy of Damosoft Web Design

Color Name	Color HEX	- Colored Text -
AliceBlue	#F0F8FF	Colored Text
AntiqueWhite	#FAEBD7	Colored Text
Aqua	#00FFFF	Colored Text
Aquamarine	#7FFFD4	Colored Text
Azure	#F0FFFF	Colored Text
Beige	#F5F5DC	Colored Text
Bisque	#FFE4C4	Colored Text

Black	#000000	Colored Text
BlanchedAlmond	#FFEBCD	Colored Text
Blue	#0000FF	Colored Text
BlueViolet	#8A2BE2	Colored Text
Brown	#A52A2A	Colored Text
BurlyWood	#DEB887	Colored Text
CadetBlue	#5F9EA0	Colored Text
Chartreuse	#7FFF00	Colored Text
Chocolate	#D2691E	Colored Text
Coral	#FF7F50	Colored Text
CornflowerBlue	#6495ED	Colored Text
Cornsilk	#FFF8DC	Colored Text
Crimson	#DC143C	Colored Text
Cyan	#00FFFF	Colored Text
DarkBlue	#00008B	Colored Text
DarkCyan	#008B8B	Colored Text
DarkGoldenRod	#B8860B	Colored Text
DarkGray	#A9A9A9	Colored Text
DarkGreen	#006400	Colored Text
DarkKhaki	#BDB76B	Colored Text
DarkMagenta	#8B008B	Colored Text
DarkOliveGreen	#556B2F	Colored Text
Darkorange	#FF8C00	Colored Text
DarkOrchid	#9932CC	Colored Text
DarkRed	#8B0000	Colored Text
DarkSalmon	#E9967A	Colored Text
DarkSeaGreen	#8FBC8F	Colored Text
DarkSlateBlue	#483D8B	Colored Text
DarkSlateGray	#2F4F4F	Colored Text
DarkTurquoise	#00CED1	Colored Text
DarkViolet	#9400D3	Colored Text
DeepPink	#FF1493	Colored Text
DeepSkyBlue	#00BFFF	Colored Text
DimGray	#696969	Colored Text
DodgerBlue	#1E90FF	Colored Text
Feldspar	#D19275	Colored Text
FireBrick	#B22222	Colored Text
FloralWhite	#FFFAF0	Colored Text
ForestGreen	#228B22	Colored Text
Fuchsia	#FF00FF	Colored Text
Gainsboro	#DCDCDC	Colored Text
GhostWhite	#F8F8FF	Colored Text
Gold	#FFD700	Colored Text
GoldenRod	#DAA520	Colored Text
Gray	#808080	Colored Text
Green	#008000	Colored Text
GreenYellow	#ADFF2F	Colored Text
HoneyDew	#F0FFF0	Colored Text
HotPink	#FF69B4	Colored Text
IndianRed	#CD5C5C	Colored Text
Indigo	#4B0082	Colored Text
Ivory	#FFFFFF	Colored Text
Khaki	#F0E68C	Colored Text
Lavender	#E6E6FA	Colored Text

LavenderBlush	#FFF0F5	Colored Text
LawnGreen	#7CFC00	Colored Text
LemonChiffon	#FFFACD	Colored Text
LightBlue	#ADD8E6	Colored Text
LightCoral	#F08080	Colored Text
LightCyan	#E0FFFF	Colored Text
LightGoldenRodYellow	#FAFAD2	Colored Text
LightGrey	#D3D3D3	Colored Text
LightGreen	#90EE90	Colored Text
LightPink	#FFB6C1	Colored Text
LightSalmon	#FFA07A	Colored Text
LightSeaGreen	#20B2AA	Colored Text
LightSkyBlue	#87CEFA	Colored Text
LightSlateBlue	#8470FF	Colored Text
LightSlateGray	#778899	Colored Text
LightSteelBlue	#B0C4DE	Colored Text
LightYellow	#FFFFE0	Colored Text
Lime	#00FF00	Colored Text
LimeGreen	#32CD32	Colored Text
Linen	#FAF0E6	Colored Text
Magenta	#FF00FF	Colored Text
Maroon	#800000	Colored Text
MediumAquaMarine	#66CDAA	Colored Text
MediumBlue	#0000CD	Colored Text
MediumOrchid	#BA55D3	Colored Text
MediumPurple	#9370D8	Colored Text
MediumSeaGreen	#3CB371	Colored Text
MediumSlateBlue	#7B68EE	Colored Text
MediumSpringGreen	#00FA9A	Colored Text
MediumTurquoise	#48D1CC	Colored Text
MediumVioletRed	#C71585	Colored Text
MidnightBlue	#191970	Colored Text
MintCream	#F5FFFA	Colored Text
MistyRose	#FFE4E1	Colored Text
Moccasin	#FFE4B5	Colored Text
NavajoWhite	#FFDEAD	Colored Text
Navy	#000080	Colored Text
OldLace	#FDF5E6	Colored Text
Olive	#808000	Colored Text
OliveDrab	#6B8E23	Colored Text
Orange	#FFA500	Colored Text
OrangeRed	#FF4500	Colored Text
Orchid	#DA70D6	Colored Text
PaleGoldenRod	#EEE8AA	Colored Text
PaleGreen	#98FB98	Colored Text
PaleTurquoise	#AFEEEE	Colored Text
PaleVioletRed	#D87093	Colored Text
PapayaWhip	#FFefd5	Colored Text
PeachPuff	#FFDAB9	Colored Text
Peru	#CD853F	Colored Text
Pink	#FFC0CB	Colored Text
Plum	#DDA0DD	Colored Text
PowderBlue	#B0E0E6	Colored Text
Purple	#800080	Colored Text

Red	#FF0000	Colored Text
RosyBrown	#BC8F8F	Colored Text
RoyalBlue	#4169E1	Colored Text
SaddleBrown	#8B4513	Colored Text
Salmon	#FA8072	Colored Text
SandyBrown	#F4A460	Colored Text
SeaGreen	#2E8B57	Colored Text
SeaShell	#FFF5EE	Colored Text
Sienna	#A0522D	Colored Text
Silver	#C0C0C0	Colored Text
SkyBlue	#87CEEB	Colored Text
SlateBlue	#6A5ACD	Colored Text
SlateGray	#708090	Colored Text
Snow	#FFFAFA	Colored Text
SpringGreen	#00FF7F	Colored Text
SteelBlue	#4682B4	Colored Text
Tan	#D2B48C	Colored Text
Teal	#008080	Colored Text
Thistle	#D8BFD8	Colored Text
Tomato	#FF6347	Colored Text
Turquoise	#40E0D0	Colored Text
Violet	#EE82EE	Colored Text
VioletRed	#D02090	Colored Text
Wheat	#F5DEB3	Colored Text
White	#FFFFFF	
WhiteSmoke	#F5F5F5	Colored Text
Yellow	#FFFF00	Colored Text
YellowGreen	#9ACD32	Colored Text

⚠ Not all Color Names are valid in all Browsers, so to be on the safe side, it is usually best to use the HTML number by default. If these colors do not meet your requirements, see the link at the bottom of the page for the Color Picker II.

### Bold Text

Two Underscore ( `_` ) characters are used to make text Bold.

Example: `__This Text is Bold__` produces:

**This Text is Bold**

### Italic Text

Two Single Quote ( `'` ) characters are used to make text Italic.

Example: `"This Text is Italic"` produces:

*This Text is Italic*



### **Underlined Text**

Three Equal (=) characters are used to underline text.

Example: ===This Text is Underlined=== produces:  
This Text is Underlined

### **Centered Text**

Two Colon (:) characters are used to Center text. The Centered Text can be centered within a Box, a Table, or almost anything else.

Example: ::This Text is Centered:: produces:  
This Text is Centered

### **Monospaced Text for Code**

Monospaced Text is useful when displaying Code and can be created in two ways. The easiest is to start a new line with one or more spaces. The Minus (-) and Plus (+) character combination can also be used to specify a Monospaced Text.

Example: -+This Text uses a Monospaced Font+- produces:  
This Text uses a Monospaced Font

⚠ If using a Monospaced Font, be sure to keep the line length short. If the lines are too long, they will push the right column out of the browser display area.

⚠ The Leading Space Monospaced Font is disabled on many sites.

### **Text box**

Apply one carat at start and end of text to be in a box.

Example: ^This Text is in a box^ produces:

This Text is in a box

NOTE: This CSS style is called "simplebox" and may look different or may not exist, depending on your theme CSS.

### **Indent**

Example: ;Did you know indent will appear: here produces:

Did you know indent will appear  
here

### Using Square Brackets

If you wish to include square brackets in your text (i.e. as regular text and not a link) simply add an additional open bracket to start. E.g.

[[this would not be a link]]

Would render like this...

[this would not be a link]

Useful Links

- The Color Picker II is located at <http://www.pagetutor.com/pagetutor/makapage/picker/>

### Non-breaking space

Use ~hs~ to add the HTML "&nbsp;" for a non-breaking space.

---

### Wiki-Syntax Special Characters

# Wiki-Syntax Special Characters

Of course - any of the characters in the following table can be added to a wiki page by enclosing it's number within a pair of Tildies. Example: ~169~ will display ©

000	001	002	003	004	005	006	007	008	009	010	011	012	013	014	015	::
016	017	018	019	020	021	022	023	024	025	026	027	028	029	030	031	
032	033	034	035	036	037	038	039	040	041	042	043	044	045	046	047	
	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/	
048	049	050	051	052	053	054	055	056	057	058	059	060	061	062	063	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
064	065	066	067	068	069	070	071	072	073	074	075	076	077	078	079	
	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
080	081	082	083	084	085	086	087	088	089	090	091	092	093	094	095	
	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
096	097	098	099	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	

	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	
	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{		}	~	
128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	
	€	„	‚	ƒ	”	…	†	‡	^	%	Š	‹	Œ	‚	Ž	‚
144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	
	‚	‘	’	“	”	•	–	—	˜	™	š	›	œ	‚	ž	ÿ
160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	
	ı	¢	£	¤	¥	¦	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬		®	¯	
176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	
	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	
	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	
	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	
	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251	252	253	254	255	
	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

The most often used special characters can be given (case insensitive) as:

~bs~ ~hs~ ~amp~ ~ldq~ ~rdq~ ~lsq~ ~rsq~ ~c~ ~--- " -- " ~lt~ ~gt~  
 &#92; &nbsp; &amp; &ldquo; &rdquo; &lsquo; &rsquo; &copy; &mdash; &mdash; &lt; &gt;  
 \ & " " ' ' © — " — " < >

## Wiki Config

# Wiki Config



- **Wiki Config**
  - **Admin Access**
  - **Sections: Tiki Config Panel**
  - **Wiki settings**
    - **Dumps**
    - **Create a tag for the current wiki**
    - **Restore the wiki**
    - **Remove a tag**
    - **Wiki comments settings**
    - **Wiki attachments**
    - **Export Wiki Pages**
    - **Remove unused pictures**

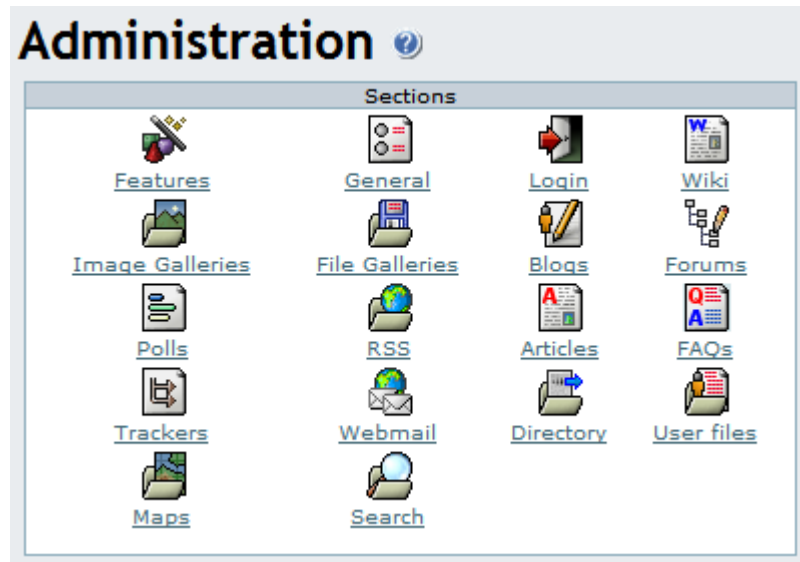
- [Wiki Home Page](#)
- [Wiki Discussion](#)
- [Wiki Link Format](#)
- [Wiki page list configuration](#)
- [Wiki features](#)
  - [Sandbox](#)
  - [Last Changes](#)
  - [Dump](#)
  - [Export](#)
  - [Rating](#)
  - [History](#)
  - [List Pages](#)
  - [Backlinks](#)
  - [Like pages](#)
  - [Rankings](#)
  - [Undo](#)
  - [Multiprint](#)
  - [PDF generation](#)
  - [Comments](#)
  - [Spellchecking](#)
  - [Minor Edits](#)
  - [Use templates](#)
  - [Warn on edit](#)
  - [Pictures](#)
  - [Use page description](#)
  - [Show page title](#)
  - [Cache Wiki pages](#)
  - [Footnotes](#)
  - [Users can save to notepad](#)
  - [Users can lock pages](#)
  - [Use WikiWords](#)
  - [Page creators are admin of their pages](#)
  - [Table syntax](#)
  - [Automonospaced text](#)
  - [Uses Slideshow](#)
- [Wiki History](#)
- [Copyright Management](#)
- [Wiki Watch](#)

### Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **Menu** , click on "**Admin (click!)**".

## Sections: Tiki Config Panel

You will access the **Sections Tiki Config Panel** (see Tiki Config ), as shown in this graphics:

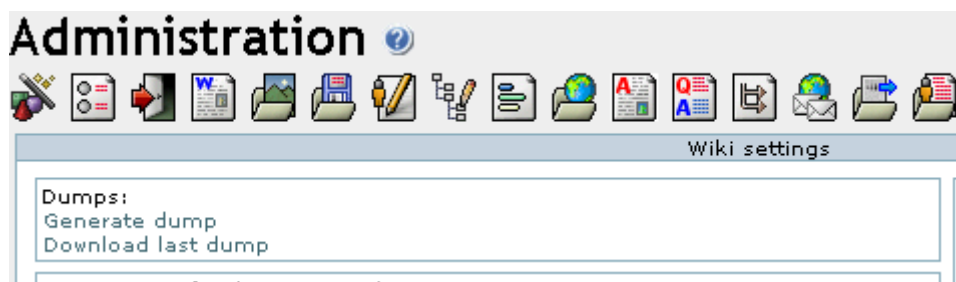


## Wiki settings



Wiki

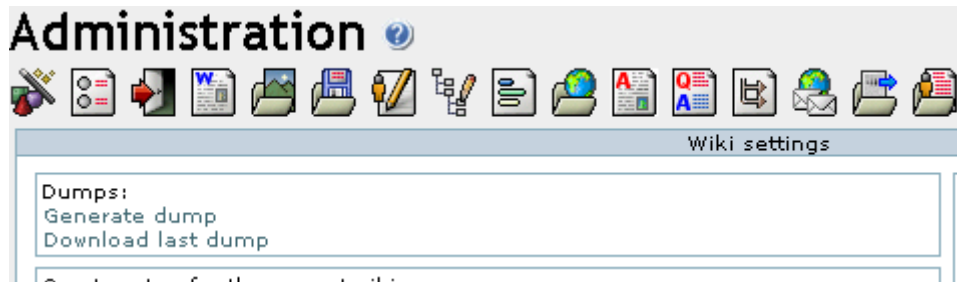
From the Tiki Config Panel, click the Wiki icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:



## Dumps

This section can be used to generate/download an XHTML dump of your Wiki that can be used for offline browsing, distributing the Wiki in a CD, off-site presentations, and so on.

- Click on the links to download dumps



### Create a tag for the current wiki

- Push the button to create a tag

Create a tag for the current wiki  
Tag Name:

### Restore the wiki

- Push the button to restore a tag

Restore the wiki  
Tag Name:

### Remove a tag

- Push the button to remove a tag

Remove a tag  
Tag Name:

Tags: A tag is a mark in the current state of the Wiki. They can be used to save the Wiki at regular intervals and to recover the whole Wiki to a particular state if something disastrous occurred. To create a tag simply enter a tag name and click the **create** tag button. To restore a tag select one of the existing tags and click **restore** (*all your Wiki pages will be lost and the saved state for the wiki will be restored!*). Since tags can take a lot of space you can remove tags that you don't want to use by clicking the **remove** tag button after selecting the tag that you don't want to use anymore.

### Wiki comments settings

Wiki pages can have comments. In this panel you can select the default number of comments to view for Wiki pages and how comments will be sorted.

- Push the button to change preferences

Wiki comments settings  
Default number of comments per page:   
Comments default ordering:

### Wiki attachments

A Wiki page can have attached files. In this panel you can configure whether attachments are allowed and where to store the files. You can store attachments in the database or a directory. The directory path can be absolute (example: `/foo/bar/uploads/`) or relative to the Tiki directory (example: `files/`).

- Click on the button to change preferences

⚠ The trailing slash is mandatory.

Wiki attachments	
Wiki attachments:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use database to store files:	<input type="radio"/>
Use a directory to store files:	<input type="radio"/> Path: <input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

### Export Wiki Pages

The **Export** link can be used to export all your Wiki pages to a PHPWiki compatible format. Then you can import pages if you want using the **Import PHPWiki Dump** link in the **Admin** menu. Each page is exported to a file where all the versions of the page are stored in MIME format.

- Click on the link to export wiki pages

Export Wiki Pages	<input type="button" value="Export"/>
-------------------	---------------------------------------

### Remove unused pictures

This link can be used to remove all the pictures that are stored in the Wiki pictures directory (*img/wiki\_up*) but are not referenced in any Wiki page.

- Click on the link to remove unused pictures

<input type="button" value="Remove unused pictures"/>
---

### Wiki Home Page

Indicates the name of the page that will be the HomePage for your Wiki.

- Click on the button to set the page

Wiki Home Page	<input type="text" value="HomePage"/>	<input type="button" value="set"/>
----------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------------

### Wiki Discussion

**Discuss pages on forums** activates a **discuss** button on every Wiki page that takes users to a thread in the specified forum for that particular page. The forum

must be created before, if not created. This allows users to create an open discourse about pages using the public forums. If the thread for a page does not exist, Tiki creates it.

*Note: Wiki Discussion feature overlaps the Comments feature and was introduced because of the difficulty to spot new comments in a Wiki with many pages but this is not problematic anymore. It is similar to the Comments features and the two can be used at the same time although it is probably better to use only one.*

- Click on the button to change preferences

Wiki Discussion

Discuss pages on forums:

Forum:

### Wiki Link Format

This control can be used to control recognition of Wiki links using the two parenthesis Wiki link syntax ((page name)).

- **english** allows only letters, numbers, space, underscore, dash, period and semicolon (but space, dash, period and semicolon not allowed as either the first or last characters).
- **latin** adds accented characters.
- **complete** allows anything at all but is not guaranteed to be bug-free or secure.

Note that this only affects the Wiki syntax ((page name)). It does not affect recognition of the Wiki naming convention of Smashed words starting with capital letters (example: *ThisIsSomePage*).

- Push the button to set the format

Wiki Link Format

Controls recognition of Wiki links using the two parenthesis Wiki link syntax ((page name)).

### Wiki page list configuration

Simply determines which columns will show in the **Pages** screen (available as **List pages** in the Wiki menu).

- Push the button to set preferences



Wiki page list configuration	
Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Hits	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last modification date	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Creator	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
User	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last version	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Comment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Versions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Links	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Backlinks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Size	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

### Wiki features

This section can be used to enable/disable specific Wiki features.

Wiki Features:	
Sandbox:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last changes:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dump:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
History:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
List pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Backlinks:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Like pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Rankings:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Undo:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MultiPrint:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
PDF generation:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Comments:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Spellchecking:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use templates:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Warn on edit:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="2"/> mins
Pictures:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use page description:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show page title:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cache wiki pages (global):	<input type="text" value="5 minutes"/>
Individual cache:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Footnotes:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Users can lock pages (if perm):	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use WikiWords:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Link plural WikiWords to their singular forms:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Page creators are admin of their pages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tables syntax:	<input type="text" value="\n for rows"/>
Automonospaced text:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Uses Slideshow:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Change preferences"/>	

### Sandbox

The Sandbox page allows users to practice their Wiki page editing skills. The Sandbox is a special page where everybody has write permission and no history is saved.

### Last Changes

This feature displays the last changes to the Wiki.

#### Dump

If enabled dumps can be used.

#### Export

All user to export page content as a file (?).

#### Rating

This allows you to add a poll from **polls feature** to any wiki page. The poll is unique to the page, created from a "poll template" which is created in the Poll feature: set a poll's 'active' drop-down to "template". You may have to adjust your groups permissions for **tiki\_p\_wiki\_view\_ratings** and **tiki\_p\_wiki\_vote\_ratings**.

#### History

If enabled users can see the history of each Wiki page.

#### List Pages

If enabled users can see the list of Wiki pages--like a directory of Wiki pages.

#### Backlinks

Allows users to view a list of pages that link to the current page

#### Like pages

If enabled users can see a listing of pages named similarly to the current page.

#### Rankings

If enabled users can see several charts or rankings about the Wiki.

#### Undo

If enabled then the user who last edited a page can undo his or her edit.

#### Multiprint

If enabled a section is provided where a user can select several Wiki pages and then view them in a printer-friendly version. This can be used to print multiple pages.

#### PDF generation

If enabled Wiki pages can be converted to PDF format for printing, archiving, or other purposes. *There are known bugs in the PDF generation.*

#### Comments

If enabled Wiki pages can have comments. This feature overlaps the **Wiki Discussion** feature, you can read the note about Wiki pages comments/discussion at the bottom of this page.

#### Spellchecking

If enabled the spellchecker can be used for Wiki pages.

#### Minor Edits

Users with the right permission can do minor edits on Wiki pages. Minor edits are not reflected in the history and users *watching* the page are not notified of them.

#### Use templates

If enabled templates can be used to edit Wiki pages. The user editing a page can select one of the templates available for Wiki pages. See ContentTemplatesDoc to learn how to create templates for wiki pages.

#### Warn on edit

If enabled then when a user is editing a page the **edit** button will be colored red and the name of the user editing the page will be displayed as a tooltip. If the user saves or cancels his or her edit or if the indicated amount of time passes the **edit** button will be displayed normally. This feature is useful to prevent collisions when editing pages.

#### Pictures

If enabled users can quickly add an image to a Wiki page by simply uploading the picture when editing a page. The picture will be stored in *img/wiki\_up* using the name of the picture as an Id.

#### Use page description

If enabled a description can be entered when editing a page and descriptions will be displayed below the page name when viewing a page.

#### Show page title

If enabled the page title will be displayed. If disabled no title will be displayed (and it will be hard to know what page you are editing!).

#### Cache Wiki pages

If enabled then Wiki pages can be cached, so the Tiki engine will not have to parse the page content to display it. After the indicated time passes or if the page is changed, the cache is invalidated.

#### Footnotes

If enabled logged users can write personal footnotes when editing a page. The footnotes will be displayed only to the user who edited them immediately below the Wiki page. This can be used as a good way to let users make personal notes and observations about pages.

#### Users can save to notepad

If enabled and if the user's notepad feature is enabled and if the user is logged a

**save** icon will be shown when viewing a page, letting the user save the page to his or her personal notepad.

#### Users can lock pages

If enabled then users with permission to lock pages can lock pages and only the user who locked a page or admin can unlock it.

#### Use WikiWords

If enabled then words using the Wiki naming convention of Smashed words will automatically become links. WikiWords start with capital letters and include capitals in the middle of the word (example: *ThisIsAWikiWord*).

#### Page creators are admin of their pages

If enabled then users who create a page are also in control of that page. They have administrators rights over it.

#### Table syntax

This selects the syntax to be used for new rows in tables. Can be `||` or `"\n"` (line break).

Example of both ways for inserting a new row

Using `||` for new rows    Using `\n` for new rows

```
||r1c1|r1c2||r2c2|r2c2|| ||r1c1|r1c2
```

```
                  r2c1|r2c2||
```

#### Automonospaced text

If this is enabled, the Tiki code lines starting with at least one space are interpreted and rendered with monospaced font. Generally if you have occasional users this can get them puzzled and wondering what's happening.

#### Uses Slideshow

If enabled users can generate slideshows from structures.

- Push the button, when finished to set preferences.

#### Wiki History

This panel is to control the deletion of old versions of Wiki pages.

**Maximum number of versions for history** determines how many versions of a Wiki page will be kept before older versions are deleted. This affects the level of undo that is possible, but also how much of the page's evolution you can see. This can be useful in a highly collaborative environment where it seems that some elements don't make sense anymore.

**Never delete versions younger than days** can be used as a basic way to avoid **vandals** or to make sure that editors can review all the changes done to a page if many edits were done in a short time.

- Push the button to set preferences.

Wiki History

Maximum number of versions for history:

Never delete versions younger than days:

### Copyright Management

You can use or not the **Copyright Management** to specify a content license under which all Wiki pages are published when submitted. **License Page** indicates the Wiki page containing the default license of your Wiki. It won't be created automatically. **Submit Notice** is seen when editing a Wiki page to indicate what content is suitable considering the license.

- Push the button to set preferences.

Copyright Management

Enable Feature:

License Page:

Submit Notice:

### Wiki Watch

The two first options automatize the monitoring of Wiki pages.

**Create watch for author on page creation** automatically makes a page creator monitor the page he created.

**Enable watches on comments** notifies monitorers of new comments, as for a new edit.

Used less often, **Enable watch events when I am the editor** cancels the normal behavior which assumes that editors do not want to be notified themselves when they modify a page they are monitoring.

- Push the button to set preferences.

Wiki Watch:

Create watch for author on page creation:

Enable watches on comments:

Enable watch events when I am the editor:

### Wiki Details

# Wiki Modules

module name	usage
wiki_last_comments	Shows the name of the commented pages, the beginning of comment and in tooltip the commenter and comment date.

comm_received_objects	A summary of objects received in your site from other sites (including Wiki pages)
last_modif_pages	Shows the name of the latest changed Wiki pages. Extremely useful to review modifications
quick_edit	Allows to edit or create a Wiki page by simply entering its name
random_pages	Shows random pages at each pageload
search_wiki_page	Searches for Wiki pages matching (can be partially) the name entered
top_pages	Most visited Wiki pages
user_pages	Shows the pages edited (or created) by the module viewer

---

## Image Galleries

# Image Galleries

Image galleries are collections of images. If the Image Gallery feature is enabled in your Tiki installation, you can create public or private galleries and upload images to them from your local hard drive or another Internet URL. Tiki automatically creates thumbnail versions of your uploaded images; you don't have to do so yourself. Galleries can be used for photo albums of course, but also creatively for other applications such as product "showrooms".

## Feature Overview

The following is a short list of Image Gallery features:

- Enable or disable the Image Gallery feature.
- Set display of listing fields, such as description or created date.
- Make a gallery public or private, and control its permissions.
- Create, modify and delete galleries.
- Adjust auto-thumbnailing settings.
- Set the number of thumbnail rows and columns.
- Categorize your galleries.
- Upload images from URL or disk.
- Override auto-thumbnailing by uploading your own thumbnails.
- Enter a name for your uploaded image, or, let Image Gallery use the filename.
- Put coordinates on images and display them using the **maps** feature.

From Here

- To enable Image Galleries for your Tiki site, see **General Admin.**
- To read the user manual for Image Galleries, see **Image Galleries User.**
- To learn about administering Image Galleries, see **Image Galleries Config.**

Useful Links

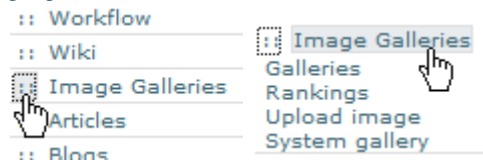
## Image Galleries User

# Image Galleries User

## The Menu

When Image Galleries are enabled and you have the right permissions, site visitors can see an Image Gallery menu can be clicked to open. From here you will be able to create galleries and upload images to the galleries.

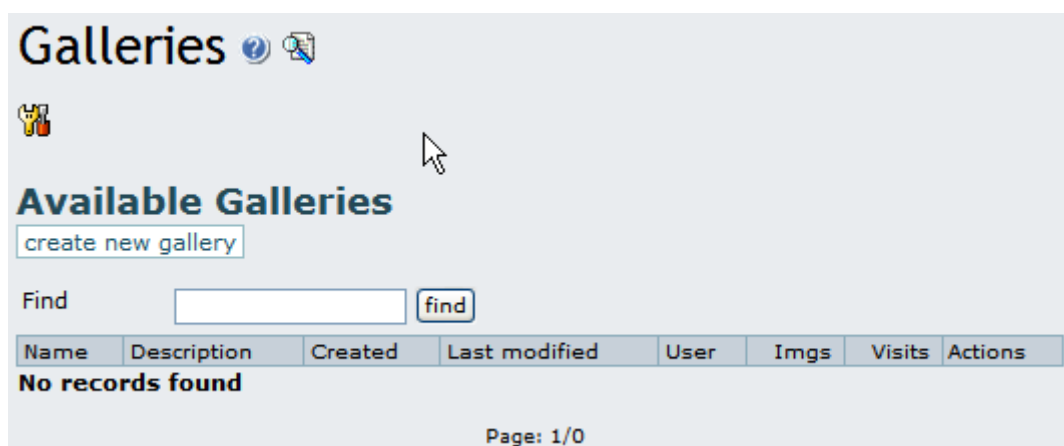
*Collapsed and Expanded Menu:*



There are usually three options in the menu — Galleries, Rankings and Upload Images — and the options may change depending on your permissions. In our example, you can see an additional option "System Galleries". In this section, let's examine each option in detail.

## Prior to Gallery Creation

At first, before galleries are created or images uploaded to them, the Galleries center panel appears as in this illustration. Notice the "create new gallery" link.



## Creating a Gallery of Images

Clicking the "create new gallery" link displays a form to create a new gallery, with



fields to fill-in, as you can see here:

**Galleries** ⓘ ⓘ

**Create a gallery**

Name:	Rick's Pix
Description:	Photos of friends, family, Japan, drumming.
Gallery is visible to non-admin users?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Max Rows per page:	10
Images per row:	6
Thumbnails size X:	80
Thumbnails size Y:	80
Available scales:	No scales available
Add scaled images size X x Y:	<input type="text"/> x <input type="text"/>
Categorize	[ <a href="#">show categories</a>   <a href="#">hide categories</a> ] Friends & Family Hobbies categorize this object: <input type="checkbox"/> <a href="#">Admin categories</a>
Other users can upload images to this gallery:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

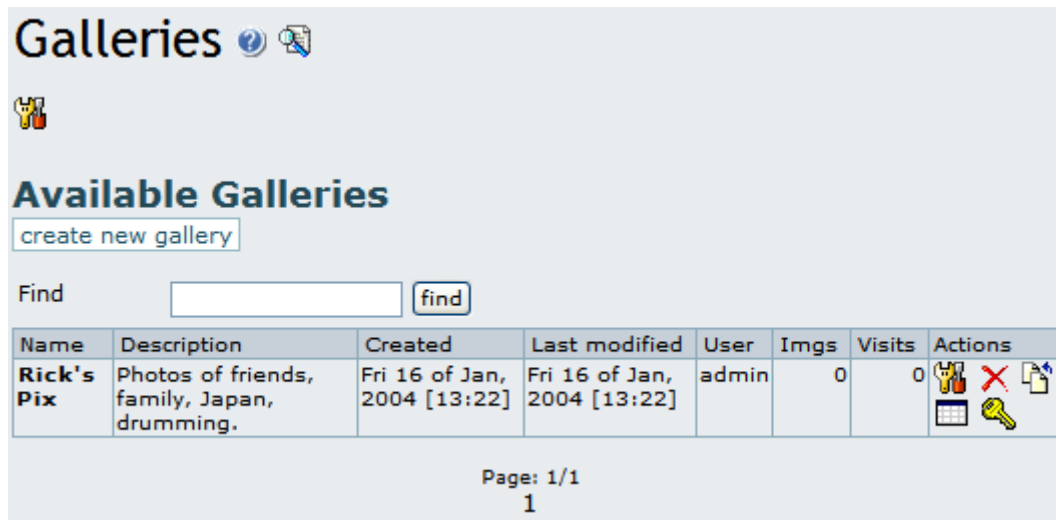
The fields are explained in the following table:

Field	Description
Name	Short name for the gallery. Appears in listings.
Description	A description of the contents of the gallery.
Gallery is visible to non-admin users	If not checked, then the gallery will be visible only to users with the tiki_p_admin_galleries permission set.
Geographic	if checked then images can have a longitude and latitude and be displayed using the <a href="#">maps</a> feature.
Max Rows per page	Used for formatting gallery appearance, this is the maximum number of rows of thumbnails, per page, that will be displayed to visitors.
Images per row	Used for formatting gallery appearance, this is the maximum number of thumbnails per row.
Thumbnails size X	Width for Thumbnails, in pixels.
Thumbnails size Y	Height for Thumbnails, in pixels.
Available scales	Scales available, according to your web hosts' image formatting software. May display 'No scales available'.
Add scaled images size X x Y	If available, you can add a scaled image of size X pixels by Y pixels.

**Categorize** Use categories to group your Gallery with other Tiki objects. Here you can show and hide the category list, choose a pre-created category, check "Categorize" to add the gallery to a category, or, Admin your categories.

**Other users can upload images to this gallery** If checked, users will be allowed to upload images to your gallery, but they won't be able to delete images or change the gallery.

Create a gallery for testing by filling in the form, and clicking Save at the bottom of the form. Once Tiki creates the gallery, it will be listed like so:



The screenshot shows the 'Galleries' page in Tiki. At the top, there's a 'Galleries' header with a help icon and a magnifying glass icon. Below it is a 'create new gallery' button. A search bar with a 'find' button is also present. The main content is a table with the following data:

Name	Description	Created	Last modified	User	Imgs	Visits	Actions
Rick's Pix	Photos of friends, family, Japan, drumming.	Fri 16 of Jan, 2004 [13:22]	Fri 16 of Jan, 2004 [13:22]	admin	0	0	[Edit] [Delete] [Upload] [List] [Perms] [Map]

Page: 1/1  
1

If you want to browse the gallery, click its name. On each line in the listing, depending on your permissions set you can see the "Actions" you can take on each gallery:



If you hover your mouse above each of the Actions icons, you can infer that they link to a set of tools including:

- **Edit**: edit the gallery information using the same form you used to create the gallery. Here, you can change gallery information, your categories or the size of existing thumbnail images.
- **Delete**: remove the entire gallery and its images. Use this with care, as it is a permanent operation.
- **Upload**: upload images to the gallery.
- **List**: browse the gallery's images as a list.
- **Perms**: configure permissions for the gallery (if you are an admin).
- **Make Map**: Generate a layer to be used with the **maps** feature (only available to admins)

e for geographic galleries).

Let's examine some of these items in more detail:

### Upload Image

The Upload Action allows you to upload images to the listed gallery, and displays a form as follows:

The screenshot shows the 'Upload Image' form with the following fields and options:

- Image Name:** Sunny Small (highlighted in yellow), with a 'use filename:' checkbox.
- Image Description:** Sunny the Dog. (text area with scrollbars)
- Gallery:** Rick's Pix (dropdown menu)
- Now enter the image URL or upload a local image from your disk** (instructional text)
- URL:** (empty text input field)
- Upload from disk:** D:\My Documents\ (text input with a file selection icon)
- Thumbnail (optional, overrides automatic thumbnail generation):** (empty text input with a '参照...' icon)
- upload** (button)

After selecting a gallery you create, or a public gallery created by another user, you can either enter the URL of your image or select it from your local hard disk. Use only one method for each image, as results can be unpredictable if you upload the same image using both methods.

Tiki auto-generates thumbnails for uploaded images, but if you don't like the way they look, or if you do not want a simple thumbnail of the entire image, you can also upload your own thumbnails along with the image.

If the image is successfully uploaded, you will see its and its thumbnail displayed, as in this graphic:

## Upload successful!

The following image was successfully uploaded:



Thumbnail:



You can view this image in your browser using: [http://rm.cogleys.net/tikiwiki/tiki-browse\\_image.php?imageId=1](http://rm.cogleys.net/tikiwiki/tiki-browse_image.php?imageId=1)

You can include the image in an Wiki page using:

```
{img src="http://rm.cogleys.net/tikiwiki/show_image.php?id=17"}
```

Success! The image was uploaded and stored into the Tiki database or into a folder on your server. Note the image, the thumbnail, and information about how to browse the image or include it in an HTML page or a Wiki page. Keep these links in mind for use in your Wiki pages or Blog posts.

**Note:** If Tiki's thumbnail is the same size as the image, there are several possible explanations:

- The image is a GIF. Tiki cannot resize GIFs do to copyright limitations regarding their format.
- Your web server's PHP installation does not have the GD or ImageMagick graphics manipulation packages installed.
- Your web server's PHP installation's GD or ImageMagick packages are too old.

### Browse or List Galleries

Clicking on the gallery name link allows you to browse a listing of thumbnails for the images in the gallery. Clicking on the "List" action displays a non-graphical, quick-loading list representation of the gallery with one image per line. The list looks like this:

## Browsing Gallery: Rick's Pix

[edit gallery](#) [rebuild thumbnails](#) [upload image](#) [browse gallery](#)

Photos of friends, family, Japan, drumming.

### Gallery Images

ID	Name	Created	Hits	User	Filesize
18	<b>27th Snareline</b> [x]	Sat 17 of Jan, 2004 [19:44]	2	admin	110445
17	<b>Sunny</b> [x]	Sat 17 of Jan, 2004 [19:40]	1	admin	6010

Page: 1/1

1

In List View, click "Browse Gallery" to toggle back to its Thumbnail View. In the following graphic, you will notice a horizontal menu with links to Edit the gallery, rebuild thumbnails, upload images, or toggle back to List View. Above the image list or thumbnails, there are links to sort by name, date, hits, user or size. For example, clicking Name sorts in alphabetical order, from A to Z, and clicking Name again sorts in reverse alphabetical order, from Z to A. Try sorting for all the options, once you have several images uploaded.

## Browsing Gallery: Rick's Pix

[edit gallery](#) [rebuild thumbnails](#) [upload image](#) [list gallery](#)

Photos of friends, family, Japan, drumming.

Sort Images by [ [Name](#) | [Date](#) | [Hits](#) | [User](#) | [Size](#) ]

 <p>27th Snareline [Delete] [Edit] [Popup] (992x680)[1 hits]</p>	 <p>Sunny [Delete] [Edit] [Popup] (134x137)[1 hits]</p>
---	--

Page: 1/1

1

[comment](#)


For each image, a thumbnail is displayed showing the image title, its size and the number of hits (a hit is computed each time the image is browsed). Under each thumbnail, you will find icons for Delete, Edit and Popup which act on that image.

Click the thumbnail to browse the image actual-size. Here, you will find image information, an option to move the image to another gallery (if you have permission), and link information to allow you to display the image in an HTML page or a Wiki page, an article or a Blog. You will also see links to the Next and Previous

images in the gallery to browse all the gallery images if you like.

### Browsing Image: Sunny

[return to gallery](#) [edit image](#)



Navigation icons: back, forward, search, refresh, home, etc.

Image Name:	Sunny
Created:	Saturday 17 of January, 2004 [19:40:00]
Hits:	2
Description:	
Author:	admin
Move image:	<input type="text" value="Rick's Pix"/> <a href="#">move</a>

You can view this image in your browser using:  
[http://rm.cogleys.net/tikiwiki/tiki-browse\\_image.php?imageId=17](http://rm.cogleys.net/tikiwiki/tiki-browse_image.php?imageId=17)

You can include the image in an HTML or Tiki page using ``

#### Individual permissions for image galleries

From the gallery listing screen, if you have the right permissions you can use the "Perms" action to set up individual permissions for an image gallery:

### Assign permissions to gallery Rick's Pix

[back](#)

**Current permissions for this object:**

group	permission	action
No individual permissions global permissions apply		

**Assign permissions to this object**

[assign](#)  to group:

- tiki\_p\_view\_image\_gallery
- tiki\_p\_upload\_images
- tiki\_p\_create\_galleries
- tiki\_p\_batch\_upload\_images
- tiki\_p\_admin\_galleries

When you assign a individual permission for a gallery, you can override Tiki's global

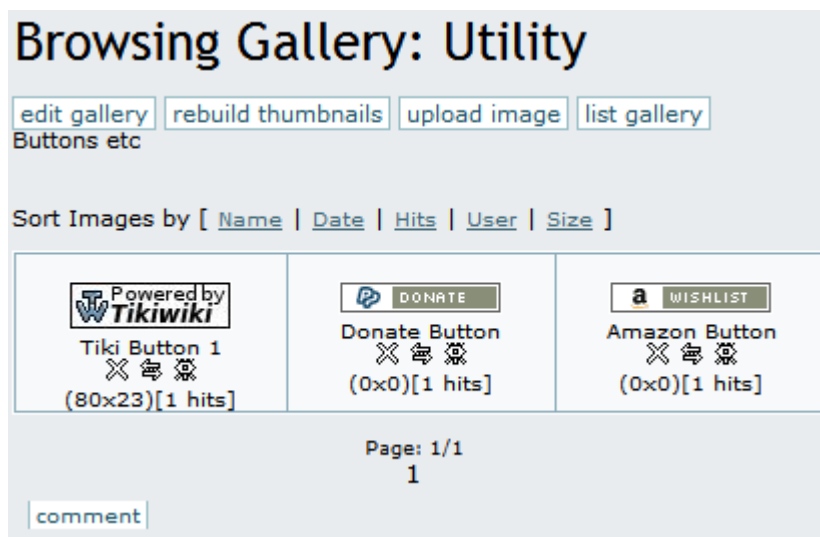
permissions system, so that only the users that have the permissions you have set for the gallery can view, edit or upload. This feature can be used to configure, for example, private galleries, paid galleries or galleries where only a special group of users can upload images.

### The System Gallery

If enabled from the admin screen, Tiki can capture images referenced from other sites or URLs, storing them in its database, or in a folder on your webserver. Tiki displays those images in a special gallery called the "System Gallery". If you are an admin, you can browse the System Gallery, and remove images from it.

## Tips & Tricks

**Utility Gallery** : One idea for a creative use of a Tiki Image Gallery is to upload buttons or icons that you might use in the pages on your site.



## Known bugs and problems

**GIF Patent Issue:** Thumbnail generation does not work for GIF format, resulting in a thumbnail which is the same size as the original image. This is due to patent issues, and cannot be resolved unless the patent for GIF format expires.

More documentation

Related Information

- To enable Image Galleries for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- To specify permissions for Image Gallery users, see [Permissions Settings](#).

- for the general procedure.
- To administer Image Galleries, see [Image Galleries Config.](#)
- For technical details, see [Image Galleries Details.](#)

#### Useful Links

- Unisys' GIF Patent  
<http://www.unisys.com/aboutunisys/lzw> 
- Why No GNU GIFs?  
<http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/gif.html> 

---

### Image Galleries Config

# Image Galleries Config

- [Image Galleries Config](#)
  - [Admin Access](#)
  - [Sections: Tiki Admin Panel](#)
  - [Image Galleries](#)
    - [Home Gallery \(main gallery\)](#)
    - [Galleries features](#)
      - [Use database to store images](#)
      - [Use directory to store images](#)
      - [Library to use for processing images](#)
      - [Uploaded images names must match regex](#)
      - [Uploaded images names cannot match regex](#)
    - [Remove images in the system gallery...](#)
    - [Gallery listing configuration](#)
    - [Image galleries comments settings](#)

Note: The most intuitive features are not listed.

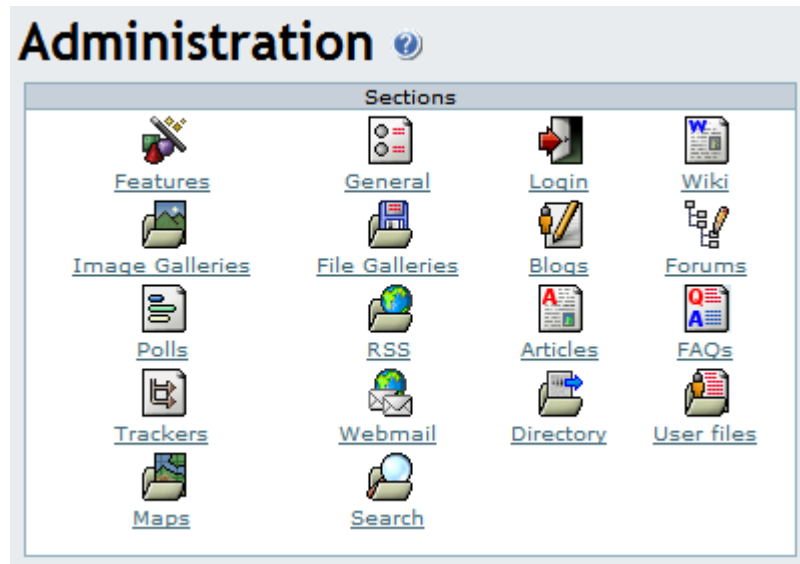
### Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **Menu**, click on "**Admin (click!)**".



## Sections: Tiki Admin Panel

You will access the **Sections** Tiki Admin Panel , as shown in this graphics:

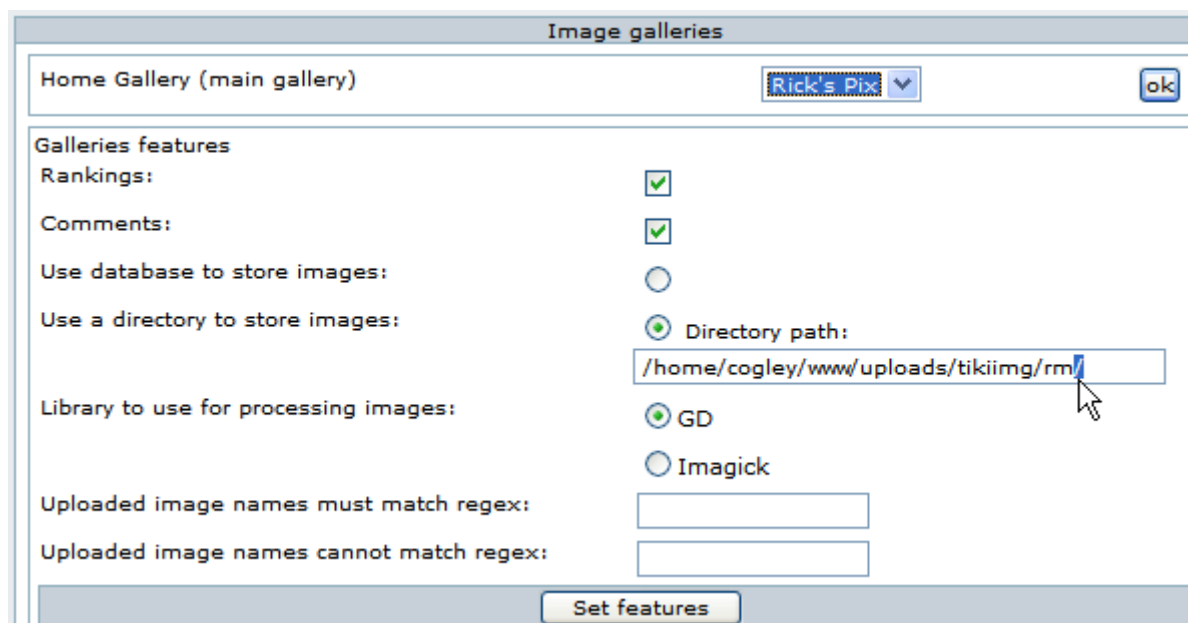


## Image Galleries



Image Galleries

From the Tiki Admin Panel, click the Image Galleries icon to display its settings panel, the top half of which appears like so:



Here you can:

- Choose a home gallery.
  - Enable and disable rankings and comments.
  - Set the image storage location.
  - Choose the graphics library.
  - Set regular expressions ("regex") to control uploaded file names.
- 

### Home Gallery (main gallery)

In the above graphic, the home gallery is set to "Rick's Pix". The home gallery is the default gallery displayed when visitors simply click the menu "Image Galleries" without expanding the menu, or when as the "top page" in your Tiki site if you set the Tiki system home page to be an Image Gallery.

- Push the button when you have finished to configure this feature.
- 

### Galleries features

#### Use database to store images

#### Use directory to store images

Choose Storage Location: You can decide for images to be stored either in the database, or in a folder on your webserver. Storing images in your database is OK for small images, but a folder is recommended for a high volume site or when your images are relatively large. Note the trailing forward slash in the path entered in the above graphic, but also here in red. Be warned, if you want to restrict access to the images, you have to choose a folder that is not browsable (not inside the document root of your webserver).

/home/cogley/www/uploads/tikiimg/rm /

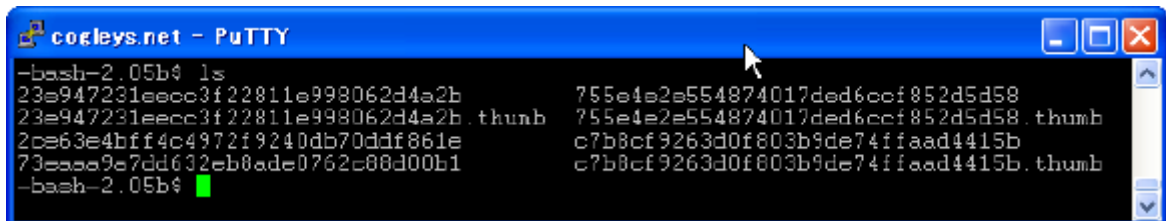
#### *Path characteristic checklist:*

- Has a trailing slash.
- Is specified from the root.
- Is in a separate folder from Tiki, for better security.
- Has its permissions set (e.g. via the chmod command) to allow uploads by the

webserver user.

- Has enough space to allow storage of your expected image volume.

If you take a look at your folder after uploading some images, you can see that Tiki randomizes the filenames, as shown in this graphic:



**! Troubleshooting Tip:** If you are having trouble with image uploads, you can edit settings in your php.ini, or, place an .htaccess file in the root of your tiki installation.

# Partial .htaccess file sample.

#

# Override PHP.ini variables, which can be viewed using phpinfo:

```
<IfModule mod_php4.c>
```

```
# If you are using Apache 2, you have to use <IfModule sapi_apache2.c>
```

```
# instead of <IfModule mod_php4.c>.
```

```
php_value max_execution_time    300
php_value upload_max_filesize   "10M"
php_value memory_limit          "32M"
php_value session.cache_expire  20000
php_value session.gc_maxlifetime 20000
php_value session.cookie_lifetime 20000
</IfModule>
```

# Zero means unlimited request body size:

```
LimitRequestBody 0
```

**! Troubleshooting Tip:** If you encounter random errors and webserver crashes, you may have updated your apache, but forgot to update/recompile your graphics library. The apache error log will give you some hints..

**Library to use for processing images**

Choose Graphics Library: You can choose which software library to use for manipulating images. Currently, your choice is:

- GD

- **Image Magick**

See below links to the GD and Image Magick sites.

Uploaded images names must match regex

Uploaded images names cannot match regex

- Push the button when you have finished to configure these features.

Now, take a look at the bottom half of the Image Galleries admin panel, as shown in this graphic:

The screenshot shows the bottom half of the Image Galleries admin panel. At the top, there is a link: [Remove images in the system gallery not being used in Wiki pages, articles or blog posts](#). Below this, there are two main sections:

- Gallery listing configuration:** A table with columns for configuration items and their status (checked or unchecked).

Configuration Item	Status
Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Description	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Created	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last modified	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
User	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Images	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Visits	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

A "Change preferences" button is located below this section.
- Image galleries comments settings:** A section with two settings:
  - Default number of comments per page:
  - Comments default ordering:  (dropdown menu)A "Change preferences" button is located below this section.

**Remove images in the system gallery...**

This is a link for removing images in the system gallery, which are "orphaned" and not used in Wiki pages, blogs or articles. A useful function for space-saving in the database.

- Click on the link to remove images

### Gallery listing configuration

Here you can control the display of fields in the Gallery Listings.

- Push the button when you have finished to configure these features.
- 
- 

### Image galleries comments settings

Here you can make settings regarding to comments.

- Push the button when you have finished to configure these features.

More documentation

### Related Information

- To enable Image Galleries for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- To specify permissions for Image Gallery users, see [Permissions Settings](#) for the general procedure.
- To create and use Image Galleries, see [Image Galleries User](#).
- For technical details, see [Image Galleries Details](#).

### Useful Links

- imagick php module  
<http://pecl.php.net/package-info.php?package=imagick> <sup>□</sup>
- Image Magick Image Software Library:  
<http://www.imagemagick.org> <sup>□</sup>
- GD Image Software Library:  
<http://www.boutell.com/gd/> <sup>□</sup>
- Apache WWW Server htaccess tutorial:  
<http://httpd.apache.org/docs/howto/htaccess.html> <sup>□</sup>
- PHP htaccess information:  
<http://jp2.php.net/configuration.changes> <sup>□</sup>
- Absolute Path Glossary Entry  
[http://linux.about.com/cs/linux101/g/absolute\\_path.htm](http://linux.about.com/cs/linux101/g/absolute_path.htm) <sup>□</sup>

## Image Galleries Details

# Image Galleries Details

- Image Galleries Details
  - Permissions
  - Preferences
  - Files used
  - Database

## Permissions

Perm Name	Default Level	Description
tiki_p_admin_galleries	editors	Can admin Image Galleries.
tiki_p_create_galleries	editors	Can create Image Galleries.
tiki_p_upload_images	admin	Can upload images to Image Galleries.
tiki_p_view_image_gallery	basic	Can view Image Galleries.
tiki_p_batch_upload_images	editors	Can upload zip files with images.

## Preferences

Pref name in tiki_preferences table	default value	comment
feature_image_galleries_comments	y	
gal_list_created	y	
gal_list_description	y	
gal_list_imgs	y	
gal_list_lastmodif	y	
gal_list_name	y	
gal_list_user	y	
gal_list_visits	y	
gal_match_regex	-	
gal_nmatch_regex	-	
gal_use_db	n	
gal_use_dir	-	
gal_use_lib	gd	
image_galleries_comments_default_orderin	points_desc	
image_galleries_comments_per_page	10	
max_rss_image_galleries	10	
max_rss_image_gallery	10	
rss_image_galleries	y	
rss_image_gallery	n	

## Files used

Main files	nnnn.php
Admin	nnn.php
Libs	lib/nnn/nnn.php
Modules	modules/mod-nnn.php
Misc files	templates/mail/nnn.tpl
Related images	img/custom/nnn.jpeg

## Database

Table	Usage
tiki_galleries	
tiki_galleries_scales	
tiki_images	
tiki_images_data	

---

## Articles

# Articles

- [Articles](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
    - [Topics](#)
    - [Article Types](#)

Articles and submissions are one of the central features of the TikiWiki Content Management System (CMS). With articles you can build the foundation for a site like those constructed using CMS systems like PHPNuke or Postnuke with the added advantages of Tiki.

There are three structural components for the Articles sub-system: Topics, Articles and Submissions.

- Topics - Each item belongs to one, and only one, topic. You can also assign multiple categories to each item.
- Article - The actual content item that gets displayed, commented on, etc.
- Submission - This is an article that hasn't been approved yet by an authorized

admin.

## Feature Overview

### Topics

Articles and submissions are classified in topics. You can edit topics from the admin topics screen. **Note:** You must create a topic before anyone can submit an article! In this screen you can add and remove topics or you can activate/deactivate topics without removing them. You can also click the perms link to assign permissions to the topic.

The permissions for topic works as follows:

- If no permission is assigned to the topic then everybody can read articles or reviews in this topic.
- If the tiki\_p\_read\_topic permission is assigned for the topic only the groups with the permission can view the topic and other users won't see content in the topic (Articles, reviews, etc). This can be used to manage private topics that only users in some groups can read.

NB: Topics are not **categories**. Topic is only for articles, category is for a lot of Tikiwiki objects

### Article Types

There are currently 3 different article types:

- Article - Normal type, only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
- Review - Articles with reader-added ratings. Only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
- Event - Used for showing upcoming events or to automatically remove content from your site. Events display until the "Publication/Event Date". Switching the type between article and event should cause it to appear and disappear from the Article Home page. (**Note:** Events are a v1.8 feature)

From Here

- To enable articles for your site, see **General Admin**.



Useful Links

---

## Articles User

# Using Articles

- Using Articles
  - The Articles menu
  - Editing or Submitting Articles
  - Articles Home
  - List Articles
  - Rankings
  - Submit Article
  - View Submissions

## The Articles menu



As a user this is a simple menu. You can visit the Articles Home, see a list of articles, view Rankings, send a submission or view active submissions. Of course, what you can or can't do and what you see in this menu is configurable.

If you are admin click the Edit article link in the admin menu to enter a new article.

## Editing or Submitting Articles

This is the screen where you can edit and existing article or create a new article, we'll examine each field in detail:

Title	<input type="text"/>
Author Name	<input type="text" value="John lewis"/>
Topic	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Type	<input type="text" value="Article"/>
Own Image	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/>
Use own image	<input type="checkbox"/>
Own image size x	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Own image size y	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Apply template	<input type="text" value="none"/>
Categorize	[ <a href="#">show categories</a>   <a href="#">hide categories</a> ]
Heading	<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 50px;"></div>
Quicklinks	
Body	<p>Use ...page... to separate pages in a multi-page article</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 200px;"></div>
Publish Date	December <input type="text" value="15"/> 2003 at <input type="text" value="09"/> <input type="text" value="40"/>
Expiration Date	December <input type="text" value="14"/> 2004 at <input type="text" value="18"/> <input type="text" value="00"/>
Allow HTML: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
<input type="button" value="preview"/> <input type="button" value="save"/>	

- **Title** - The article title
- **Author Nam** - The name of the author as it will appear in the article (you can use any name here).
- **Topic** - The topic to which the article is assigned. If you don't see options in the select box for topics then you must first create a topic. Use the admin topics link in the admin menu to create a topic and then go back to the edit article screen.
- **Type** is the type of article to use.
- **Rating** - This only shows up for Review articles. Assign a numerical rating to

- whatever you are reviewing.
- **Own Image** - Articles can have an associated image. If you want your article to have an associated image you can upload an image using the Own Image field.
  - **Use own imag** - By default the article will display the topic image (each topic has an image), if you want the article to display its own image instead of the topic image, check the Use own image checkbox.
  - **Float text around image** - Well, do you want the text to float around the image?
  - **Own image size x and Own image size y** - Allows you to adjust the display size of the article image.
  - **Apply template** - To use this, you must have the "Use templates" box checked in the CMS admin page. Any templates created in the Content template section with the "use in cms:" box checked will show up in this drop down list.
  - **Categorize** - Assign categories for this article.
  - **Heading and Body** - The heading and the body are self explanatory. Use the Wiki Tag System here as if you were editing a Wiki Page. If you want to use HTML in the article make sure that the AllowHTML option is checked at the bottom.
  - **Publish/Event Date** - Set the publishing date for the article. This affects when the article is visible on the Articles Home page.
  - **Allow HTML** - Check this box to allow HTML content in the Heading or Body.

Finally, use the **preview** feature as many times as you want to preview and edit the article. Make sure you click save **before** navigating away from the page.

## Articles Home

The Articles Home displays the last 'n' articles of the CMS system. 'N' can be configured from the **General Admin** CMS admin page. This page can be set up as the Tiki Home Page from the admin screen if you want to use Tiki as if it were a normal CMS system.

The screenshot shows the TikiWiki 1.8 -Polaris- experimental website interface. At the top, it says "TikiWiki 1.8 -Polaris- experimental website. You may experience some broken features, migration is in progress." and "Mon 15 Dec, 2003 [14:26 UTC]". The main content area displays two articles:

- Unexpected 1.7.5 to be released!**  
By: Damian Parker on: Mon 15 Dec, 2003 [11:50 UTC] (41 reads)  
A unplanned 1.7.5 has been drawn up for the 1.7 [TikiWiki](#) release family. This is only a bugfix release and will not contain any new features.  
ANNOUNCE  
Read More (398 bytes) no comments
- Second release candidate of Tiki 1.8 -Polaris-**  
By: Oliver Hertel on: Sat 22 Nov, 2003 [15:10 UTC] (3096 reads)  
RC2: Second release candidate of Tiki 1.8 -Polaris-  
Read More (500 bytes) 2 comments

The left sidebar contains navigation links like "Getting Started", "Search Wiki PageName", "TikiWiki", and "Menu". The right sidebar has a "Login" form, a "Search" box, and "Last changes" list.

You will see each article displayed showing the heading and a link to read more where you can read the whole article:

This screenshot shows the same article, "Unexpected 1.7.5 to be released!", in a detailed view. The article text is expanded to show more details:

Please review the [ReleaseProcess175](#) page for more details. This release is managed by [Damian](#), please contact me via [Tiki Mail](#) if you have any bugfixes we can include in this release.

A release date will be issued on [ReleaseProcess175](#) once I have gathered enough information about suggested bugfixes for this release.

comment

The interface elements (left sidebar, right sidebar) are identical to the previous screenshot.

You can also filter the list of articles shown here by:

- type (article, review)
- topic (numeric id)
- find (a string to search for in the title, heading or body)

For example, you could make a Wiki link to a page showing only "reviews" with this:

[tiki-view\_articles.php?type=review]

or, only articles with the word "Tiki" in them with:

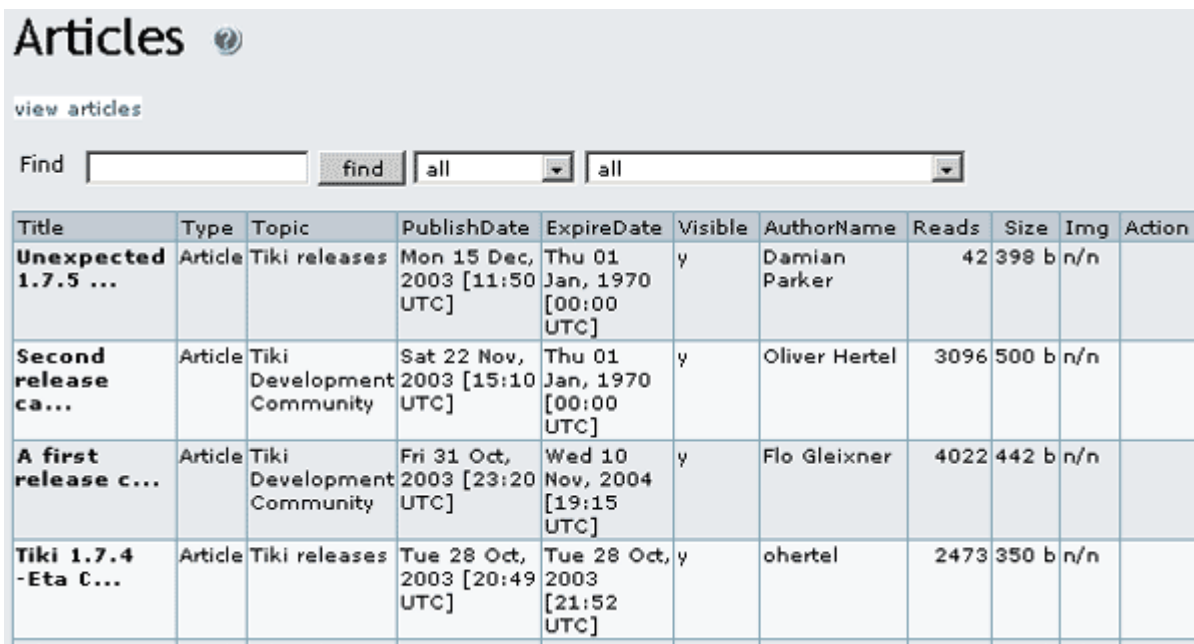
[tiki-view\_articles.php?type=article&find=Tiki]

You can also change the sort order from the default (newest to oldest) with the "sort\_mode" option. For example, to list upcoming events in order of occurrence, use:

tiki-view\_articles.php?sort\_mode=publishDate\_asc&type=Event

## List Articles

The list articles section shows a list of articles.



Title	Type	Topic	PublishDate	ExpireDate	Visible	AuthorName	Reads	Size	Img	Action
<b>Unexpected 1.7.5 ...</b>	Article	Tiki releases	Mon 15 Dec, 2003 [11:50 UTC]	Thu 01 Jan, 1970 [00:00 UTC]	y	Damian Parker	42	398 b	n/n	
<b>Second release ca...</b>	Article	Tiki Development Community	Sat 22 Nov, 2003 [15:10 UTC]	Thu 01 Jan, 1970 [00:00 UTC]	y	Oliver Hertel	3096	500 b	n/n	
<b>A first release c...</b>	Article	Tiki Development Community	Fri 31 Oct, 2003 [23:20 UTC]	Wed 10 Nov, 2004 [19:15 UTC]	y	Flo Gleixner	4022	442 b	n/n	
<b>Tiki 1.7.4 -Eta C...</b>	Article	Tiki releases	Tue 28 Oct, 2003 [20:49 UTC]	Tue 28 Oct, 2003 [21:52 UTC]	y	ohertel	2473	350 b	n/n	

You can sort the list by any column, you can filter articles containing some word and if you have the permissions you will see options to edit, read or remove the article. This screen is useful for administrators as well as regular users.

## Rankings

In the Rankings page you will access to rankings for the CMS system such as Top Articles, Top Authors, etc. You have to select the ranking to display and the number of records to display and click the view button to see the ranking.

## Rankings

Top articles  Top 10

Wiki top articles (Reads)	
1)	<a href="#">Tiki 1.7 -Eta Carinae- released</a> 9042
2)	<a href="#">A first release candidate of Tiki 1.8 -Polaris-</a> 4022
3)	<a href="#">Second release candidate of Tiki 1.8 -Polaris-</a> 3096
4)	<a href="#">Tiki 1.7.4 -Eta Carinae- released</a> 2473
5)	<a href="#">Moving to another star ...</a> 2372
6)	<a href="#">Luis Interview by mose</a> 2157
7)	<a href="#">Tiki 1.7.3 -Eta Carinae- released</a> 1794
8)	<a href="#">Tiki 1.7.2 -Eta Carinae- released</a> 1692
9)	<a href="#">Tiki 1.7.1.1 -Eta Carinae- released</a> 1661
10)	<a href="#">Help squash the LeftCol bug</a> 1530

## Submit Article

Submitting and article is the same as editing an article with the difference that the result will be stored as a submission and not published immediately as an article. The process to edit and send a submission is the same as editing and article so you should read about editing above articles if you haven't to find out.



## View Submissions

You will a list of submissions and if you have the permissions you may see links to edit, remove or approve a submission. Once a submission is approved it becomes an article.

## Submissions

[edit new submission](#)

Find

Title	Topic	PublishDate	Size	Img	User	Action
qqqq	Tiki Development Community	Sun 23 Nov, 2003 [08:07]	272 b	y/y	marcius	 

Page: 1/1  
1

In the **Action** column, holding your mouse over the icons will indicate which action they will perform.

## Articles Config

# Articles Config



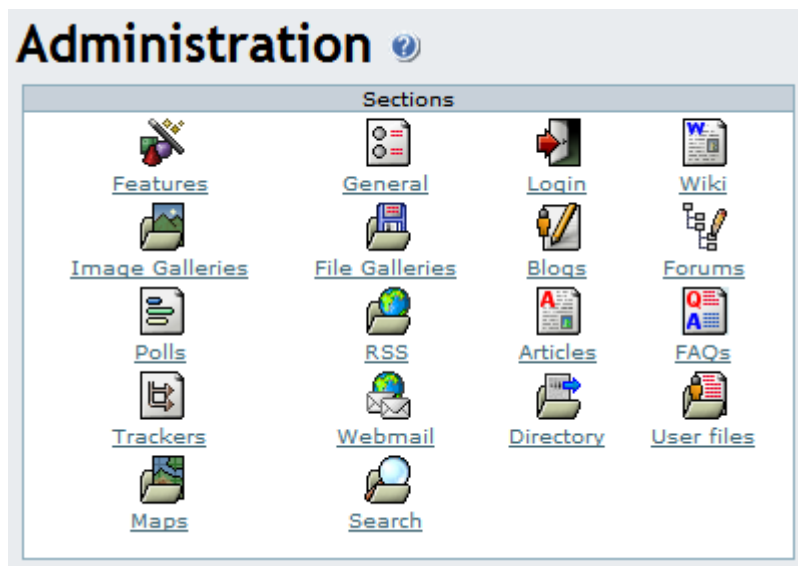
- **Articles Config**
  - **Admin Access**
  - **Sections: Tiki Admin Panel**
  - **Article/CMS settings**

### Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **Menu**, click on "**Admin (click!)**".

### Sections: Tiki Admin Panel

You will access the **Sections** Tiki Admin Panel ((see (Tiki Admin)) ), as shown in this graphics:

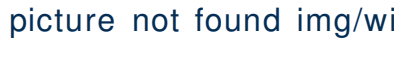
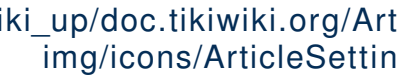


### Article/CMS settings



Articles

From the Tiki Admin Panel, click the Wiki icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

picture not found  picture not found 

You can select here if the rankings and comments features are enabled for articles and submissions. You can also select the maximum number of articles to display in the articles home page.

---

### Articles Details

# Articles Details

---

### Blogs

# Blogs

An abbreviation for **Weblog**, the term "blog" refers to a collection of related posts, which are sorted (by default) in reverse chronological order (the most recent posts are shown first).

Some blogs have a single author, who uses the blog to keep what amounts to an online diary: a day-to-day record of the individual's varied thoughts, reflections, and pertinent Web links. Other blogs contain posts from two or more authors; typically, these blogs focus on a more or less well-defined topic, such as sci-fi movie reviews. In schools and colleges, blogs are increasingly used to facilitate student journals.

TikiWiki's Blogs feature enables users to enjoy all the best features of weblogs (including RSS output, trackback pings, and remote posting via Blogger-compatible programs, such as w.Bloggar), but without the hassle (and, often, the expense) of using commercial blogging services.

A TikiWiki site can be set up to display a blog as its home page (see **General Admin** ). This means you can use TikiWiki as an alternative to less-feature-rich alternatives, such as Moveable Type.

### Feature Overview

TikiWiki's Blogs feature enables administrators to set up as many blogs as they like, or administrators can give users permission to create their own blogs. Blogs can be



accessed by listing them (Menu/Blogs/List Blogs) or by creating a link to one or more blogs in a custom menu.

Blog configuration options include the number of posts to display, whether other users are allowed to post in the blog, and whether searches and comments are allowed. In addition, the blog heading can be edited; by default, it displays the date of creation and last modification, the total number of posts and visits, and a figure that sums up the blog's activity level.

When posting to a blog, users can choose between the textarea or WYSIWYG editors; posting options include title and one or more *trackback* URLs. (See "About Trackback," below.) Users can also take advantage of TikiWiki's implementation of Blogger's XMLRPC protocol, which enables users to use a Blogger-compatible program (such as **wBlogger** ) to post to their TikiWiki blogs (see "About XMLRPC," below).

### About Trackback

The Trackback protocol, developed by Moveable Type, provides a blog author with a very convenient, low-bandwidth way to tell other blog authors that their posts have been referenced and discussed. For example, suppose you've just read a post on blog A. You post to your blog (Blog B) and discuss the Blog A post. When you save your post, you include the trackback URL. TikiWiki then sends a *trackback ping* (actually, it's not a ping, but a short message conforming to the Trackback protocol) to Blog A; Blog A's author can then see that you've posted something that's related. Now suppose the Blog A author posts something about YOUR post. When you look at your post, you'll see a list of trackback pings (including the page title, URL, and blog name). For more information on using trackback, see **Blogs User**.

### About XMLRPC

TikiWiki implements the XMLRPC standard developed by Blogger, a popular commercial blogging site. This standard is an **wp:Application programming interface**, which means that any application conforming to the standard can upload content to Blogger — or any service that conforms to the same API on the receiving end. For this reason, any application that correctly implements the Blogger XMLRPC API can be used to post and edit content in Tiki blogs. To use Blogger XMLRPC API with a Tiki, enable it in the Features panel. You can then use Tiki blogs using dekstop applications like **wBlogger**.

More documentation

- **Blogs TikiMovie** 

*View in action click after click how to use Blogs in a Flash movie.*

## Related Information

- To enable blogs for your site, see [General Admin.](#)
- To enable the XMLRPC API, see [Features Admin.](#)
- To choose configuration options for all blogs on your site, see [Blogs Config.](#)
- To specify permissions for blog users, see [Permissions Settings](#) for the general procedure; see [Blogs Detail?](#) for specific permission settings relevant to blogs.
- To create and use a blog, see [Blogs User.](#)
- To configure the popular wBlogger blog-posting tool for use with TikiWiki, see [wBlogger.](#)

## Useful Links

- Moveable Type  
<http://www.moveabletype.org> <sup>↗</sup>
- Blogger  
<http://new.blogger.com> <sup>↗</sup>
- wBlogger  
<http://wblogger.com/> <sup>↗</sup>
- Other blog software options (tikiwiki directory)  
[http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-directory\\_browse.php?parent=26](http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-directory_browse.php?parent=26) <sup>↗</sup>
- Weblog on wikipedia  
<http://en2.wikipedia.org/wiki/Weblog> <sup>↗</sup>
- Beginner's Guide to Trackback (Moveable Type)  
<http://www.moveabletype.org/trackback/beginners/> <sup>↗</sup>
- The ultimate Weblogging system, outlined  
<http://mpt.phrasewise.com/2003/05/02#a507> <sup>↗</sup>

---

## Blogs User

# Using Blogs

A *blog* (short for [Weblog](#) ) is a collection of posts (submissions) by one or more authors; typically, they're sorted in reverse chronological order (most recent first). You can think of a blog as an online journal or diary. TikiWiki's [Blogs](#) feature enables each user of a TikiWiki site to set up one or more blogs, and provides many (if not most) of the features you'll find in the top blog-only packages, such as Movable Type.

Depending on how the TikiWiki administrator has configured the TikiWiki site you're using, you may be able to do some or all of the following:

- See a list of all the available blogs on your TikiWiki site
- See which blogs are popular
- Read a blog
- Comment on a blog entry
- Print a blog entry
- Mail a blog entry to one or more recipients
- Create a blog
- Post an entry to a blog
- Edit or delete an existing post

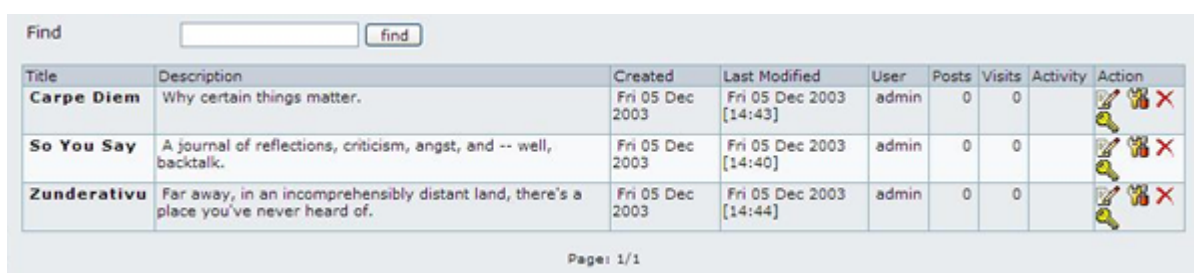
The following sections explain how to perform these actions.

- **Using Blogs**
  - **Viewing a List of Available Blogs**
  - **Listing Blogs by Rank**
    - **Reading a Blog**
  - **Printing a Blog Entry**
  - **Mailing a Blog Entry's URL**
  - **Commenting on a Blog Entry**
  - **Creating a Blog**
    - **Blog Configuration Options**
    - **The Blog Header**
  - **Posting an Entry to Your Blog**
    - **Posting Options**
    - **Editing Your Post**
  - **From Here**







## Viewing a List of Available Blogs

To view a list of available blogs, do the following:

1. On the Menu, click to the left of Blogs, if necessary, to see the options under Blogs.
2. Click List Blogs. You'll see the Blogs list, shown in the following illustration:



The screenshot shows a search bar with the text "Find" and a "find" button. Below it is a table with the following data:

Title	Description	Created	Last Modified	User	Posts	Visits	Activity	Action
<b>Carpe Diem</b>	Why certain things matter.	Fri 05 Dec 2003	Fri 05 Dec 2003 [14:43]	admin	0	0		  
<b>So You Say</b>	A journal of reflections, criticism, angst, and -- well, backtalk.	Fri 05 Dec 2003	Fri 05 Dec 2003 [14:40]	admin	0	0		  
<b>Zunderativu</b>	Far away, in an incomprehensibly distant land, there's a place you've never heard of.	Fri 05 Dec 2003	Fri 05 Dec 2003 [14:44]	admin	0	0		  

Page: 1/1

## List of Available Blogs

⚠ If you've created a blog (and you've been granted the appropriate permissions by your TikiWiki administrator), you'll see icons that enable you to post to the blog, edit the blog's configuration, define blog permissions, or remove the blog entirely. The remove option is dangerous — it will remove the blog and all the entries contained in the blog! Don't click the remove icon unless you're sure you know what you're doing.

🔍 Is the list too long for a visual search? Type part of a blog name in the Find box, and click Find.

🔍 Click one of the following column headers to change the sort order: Title, Created, Last Modified, User, Posts, Visits, or Activity. To reverse the sort sequence (ascending or descending), click the same header again.

### Listing Blogs by Rank

If your TikiWiki site has many blogs, you may wish to see which ones are more popular than others. To do so, click Rankings under Blogs in the Menu. You'll see the Rankings list, shown in the following illustration:



Most visited blogs (Visits)		
1)	<a href="#">So You Say</a>	1
2)	<a href="#">Zunderativu</a>	1
3)	<a href="#">Carpe Diem</a>	0

Blogs Ranked by Number of Visits

To view the blog rankings, do the following:

1. In the first text box, select one of the following:

- **Top Visited** Displays the blog list with the most-visited blogs listed first.
- **Last Posts** Displays the blog list with the most recently updated blogs listed first.
- **Top Active** Displays the blog list with the most frequently updated blogs listed first.

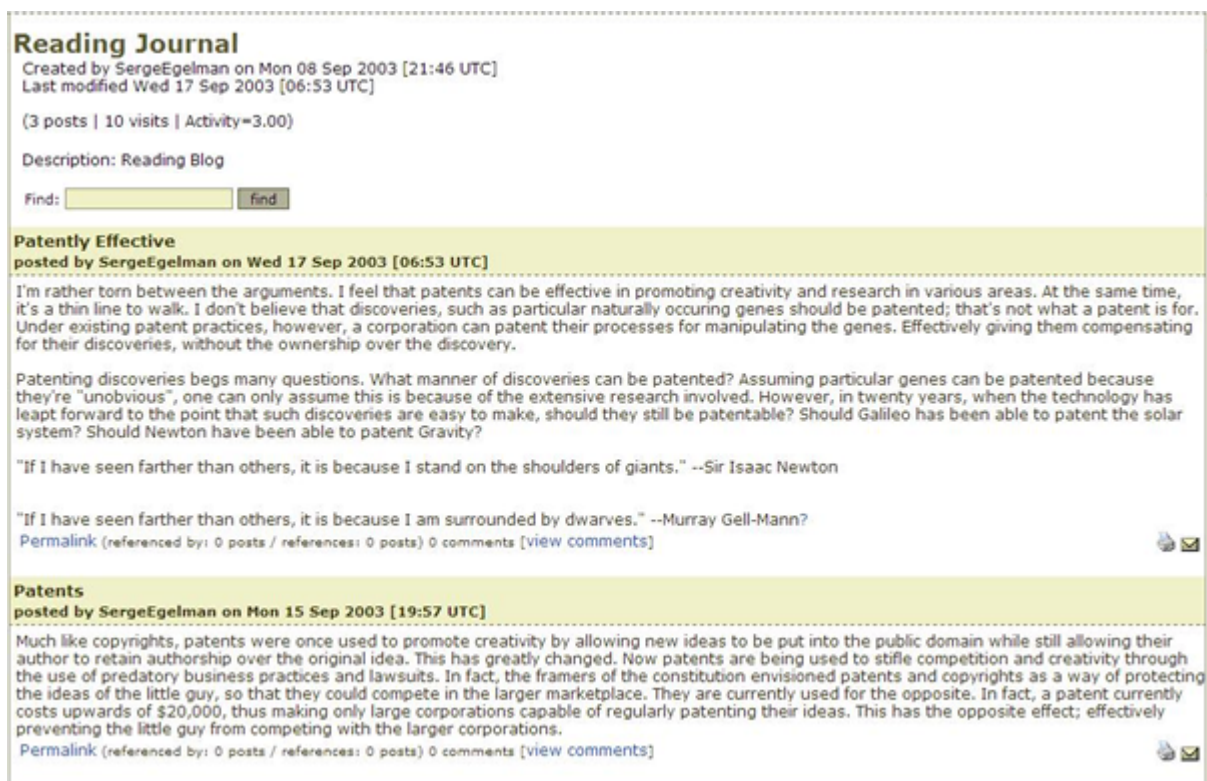
2. In the second list box, select the number of blogs to display (top 10, top 20, top 50, or top 100).

### 3. Click View.

#### Reading a Blog

To read a blog, do the following:

1. Display the blog list (see "Viewing a List of Blogs," above).
2. In the Title column, click the name of the blog you want to read. You'll see the blog's contents, as shown in the following illustration:



The screenshot shows a TikiWiki blog page. At the top, the title is "Reading Journal". Below the title, it says "Created by SergeEgelman on Mon 08 Sep 2003 [21:46 UTC]" and "Last modified Wed 17 Sep 2003 [06:53 UTC]". There are statistics: "(3 posts | 10 visits | Activity=3.00)". A description reads "Description: Reading Blog". Below that is a search box with the text "Find:" and a "find" button. The main content area has a yellow header for the first post: "Patently Effective" posted by SergeEgelman on Wed 17 Sep 2003 [06:53 UTC]. The post text discusses the effectiveness of patents and includes quotes from Sir Isaac Newton and Murray Gell-Mann. At the bottom of the post, there is a "Permalink" and a "view comments" link. The second post is titled "Patents" and posted by SergeEgelman on Mon 15 Sep 2003 [19:57 UTC]. It discusses the history and current use of patents. Like the first post, it has a "Permalink" and "view comments" link.

#### Reading a Blog


By default, blog entries are sorted in reverse chronological order, but the TikiWiki administrator may have chosen a different default sort order. Note that the blog header, by default, shows the blog title, the date of creation, the date of last modification, the number of posts, the number of visits (that is, by users other than the blog owner and admin), and the blog description, if any. Some of this information might not be visible on your TikiWiki's blogs, depending on how your administrator configured the Blogs feature.


At the bottom of each blog entry, you'll see the following:


- **Permalink** The *permalink* is the unique URL of the current entry. This URL is

useful for people who are reading the blog and would like to link to this entry in particular. With most browsers, it's possible to copy a link by right-clicking the link and choosing the appropriate option (such as "Copy Link Location") from the popup menu.

- **Referenced By** This area indicates the number of blog pages (in this TikiWiki site or elsewhere on the Web) that have set up a *trackback* to this page. For more information on trackbacks, see [Blogs](#).
- **References** This area indicates the number of blog pages to which *this* entry has sent trackback pings. For more information on trackbacks, see [Blogs](#).

 If there are so many entries that they can't all be shown on one page, click Next (at the bottom of the page) to see the next page of entries; click Prev to see the previous page.

 If you see a mini-calendar box in the left or right sidebars, select a date to filter the list. You'll see only those entries that were created on or before the date you select. To return to the full list, click Today.

 To search the full text of the entries, type a search word or phrase in the Find box, and click Find. You'll see only those entries (if any) that contain the text you typed. To see all the entries again, leave the Find box blank, and click Find again.

### Printing a Blog Entry

To print a blog entry, do the following:

1. Display the blog entry that you want to print.
2. Click the Print icon (located in the entry's lower right corner). You'll see the entry by itself, without the topbar or sidebars to distract from the entry's content.
3. Click the Print icon on your browser's toolbar, or choose Print from the File menu.
4. Click **Return to Blog**.
5. Display the blog entry that you want to print.
6. Click the Print icon (located in the entry's lower right corner). You'll see the entry by itself, without the topbar or sidebars to distract from the entry's content.

### Mailing a Blog Entry's URL

To mail a blog entry's URL to one or more recipients, do the following:

1. Display the blog entry that you want to print.
2. Click the Print icon (located in the entry's lower right corner). You'll see the Send Blog Post page.



3. In the text area, type the e-mail address to which you want to send the page. To send the page to two or more recipients, separate the e-mail addresses with commas.
4. Click Send.

### Commenting on a Blog Entry

You can comment on a blog entry if:

- Your TikiWiki administrator has given the group to which you belong permission to make comments, and
- The blog has been set up with comments enabled.

To comment on a blog entry, do the following:

1. Display the entry.
2. At the bottom of the entry, click View Comments.
3. Click Comment to display the comment composition box, shown in the following illustration.
4. In the **Title** box, type a brief but descriptive title for your comment.
5. In the **Comment** box, type the text of your comment.
6. To preview your comment, click Preview.
7. To save your comment, click Post.



The screenshot shows a comment composition interface. At the top left, it says "Post new comment" with "preview" and "post" buttons. Below this are two input fields: "Title" and "Comment". To the right of the "Title" field is a "Smileys" panel containing a grid of various emoji icons. Below the main form is a section titled "Posting comments:" which contains the text: "Use [http://www.foo.com] or [http://www.foo.com|description] for links" and "HTML tags are not allowed inside comments".

### Posting a Comment

👁️ If there's already at least one comment, and you'd like to comment on the *comment* rather than the blog entry, click **Reply to This**. (This option isn't visible unless at least one comment has already been posted.)

### Creating a Blog

If your TikiWiki administrator has granted the appropriate permissions to users, you

can create one or more blogs.

To create a blog, follow these steps:

1. Under Blogs in the Menu, click Create Blog. You'll see the Edit Blog page, shown in the following illustration.
2. Choose the configuration options you want (see "Blog Configuration Options," below).
3. Click Save.

**Blog:**  
Created by on Fri 05 Dec 2003 [17:58]  
Last modified Fri 05 Dec 2003 [17:58]  
( posts | visits | Activity=0.00) [Post] [Edit]

Description:

Title	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
Number of posts to show	10
Allow other user to post in this blog	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use titles in blog posts	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow search	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Allow comments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Blog heading	<pre>{/if} {if (\$user and \$creator eq \$user) or \$tki_p_blog_admin eq "y"} [&lt;a class="bloglink" href="tiki-edit_blog.php?blogId={\$blogId}" {/if} &lt;/div&gt; &lt;div class="blogdesc"&gt;{tr}Description:{/tr} {\$description}&lt;/div&gt;</pre>
Categorize	[ show categories   hide categories ]

preview save

### Creating a Blog

#### Blog Configuration Options

You can configure the following settings when you create your blog:

- **Title** The title of your blog. Since this title must fit in horizontally formatted blog lists, keep it short!
- **Description** A description of your blog's contents. Like the title, the description must fit in horizontally formatted blog lists, so keep it short.
- **Number of posts to show** (Default: 10)
- **Allow other user to post in this blog** If you leave this option unchecked, you're the only user who can post in the blog. Depending on how your



administrator has set up blog-related permissions, some or all users will still be able to read your blog (Default: No).

- **Use titles in blog posts** Leave this option unchecked to title each entry with its creation date alone. This is a good choice for a diary (Default: Yes).
- **Allow search** Check this option to allow readers to search the full text of your blog entries.
- **Allow comments** Check this option to allow readers to comment on your blog entries. Just who can comment depends on how your TikiWiki administrator has defined commenting permissions; in most configurations, only registered users can comment (Default: Yes).
- **Blog heading** This box shows the code used to generate the blog heading, which appears at the top of your blog. You don't need to modify this text in order to create a blog. For more information, see "The Blog Header," below.
- **Categorize** If you have created categories and would like to categorize the blog, click Show Categories. Select a category (use Ctrl + Left Click to select more than one category). Be sure to check Categorize this Object.

### The Blog Header

If you don't like the way the blog headers look, and you're reasonably knowledgeable about HTML and Smarty code, you can edit the code that's used to generate the header. Here's how the default code looks:

```
<div class="blogtitle">{tr}Blog{/tr}: {$title}</div>
<div class="bloginfo">
{tr}Created by{/tr} {$creator}{tr} on {/tr}{$created|tiki_short_datetime}<br/>
{tr}Last modified{/tr} {$lastModif|tiki_short_datetime}<br/><br/>
({$posts} {tr}posts{/tr} | {$hits} {tr}visits{/tr} | {tr}Activity={/tr}{$activity|
string_format:"%.2f"})
{if $tiki_p_blog_post eq "y"}
{if ($user and $creator eq $user) or $tiki_p_blog_admin eq "y" or $public eq "y"}
[<a class="bloglink" href="tiki-blog_post.php?blogId={$blogId}">{tr}Post{/tr}</a>]
{/if}
{if $rss_blog eq "y"}
[<a class="bloglink" href="tiki-blog_rss.php?blogId={$blogId}">RSS</a>]
{/if}
{if ($user and $creator eq $user) or $tiki_p_blog_admin eq "y"}
[<a class="bloglink" href="tiki-edit_blog.php?blogId={$blogId}">{tr}Edit{/tr}</a>]
{/if}
</div>
<div class="blogdesc">{tr}Description:{/tr} {$description}</div>
```

### Blog Header Code



## Posting Options

Here's an overview of the options you can choose when you create a blog post.

- **Blog** If you have permission to post to more than one blog, make sure you choose the correct blog here.
- **Smileys** To include a smiley in your post, click one of the icons. The smiley code appears at the end of your post; move it to where you want the smiley to appear.
- **Quicklinks** To see how to format your text using Wiki tags, click one of the Quicklinks. The Quicklink code appears at the end of your post.
- **Title** Type a short but descriptive title (required).
- **Data** Type the text of the post here.
- **Send trackback pings to:(comma separated list of URIs)** Type the URIs of one or more sites to which you want to send trackback pings. (For more information on trackback pings, see [Blogs](#).)
- **Spellcheck** Check this option to check your spelling after you save your post. Note: This option will not work unless your TikiWiki administrator has enabled spell checking.

## Editing Your Post

To edit an entry you have already saved,

1. Display your blog.
2. Click the Edit icon on the post you want to change. You'll see the Edit Post page.
3. Make the changes.
4. Do one of the following:
  1. Click Preview to see how your post will look.
  2. Click Save to save your post but keep the editing area on-screen.
  3. Click Save and Exit to save your post and return to your blog.

## From Here

🐾 Are you a TikiWiki administrator? Learn how to administer TikiWiki's blog functions in [Blogs Config](#).

🐾 Curious to see what's under the hood? See [Blogs Ref](#) for the details.

## Blogs Config

# Blogs Config



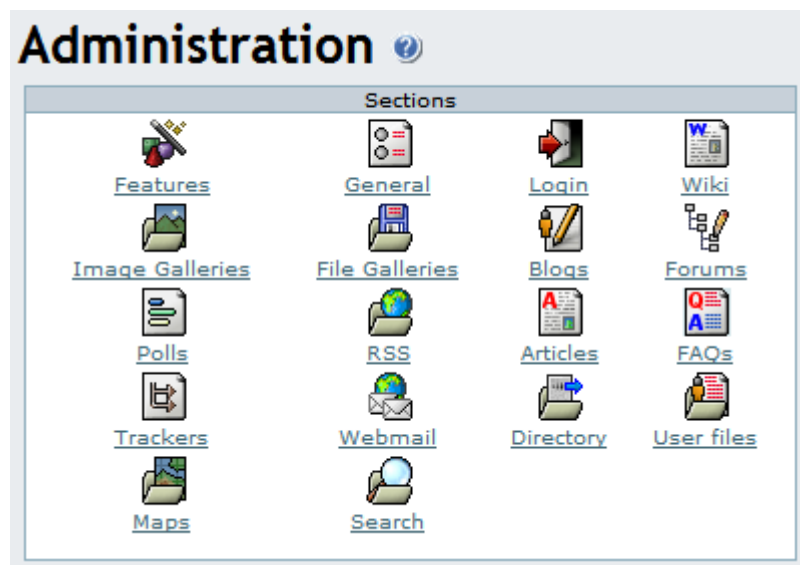
- [Blogs Config](#)
  - [Admin Access](#)
  - [Sections: Tiki Admin Panel](#)
  - [Blog settings](#)
    - [Home Blog \(main blog\)](#)
    - [Blog features](#)
    - [Blog listings configuration](#)
    - [Blog comments settings](#)
  - [From Here](#)

## Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **Menu**, click on "**Admin (click!)**".

## Sections: Tiki Admin Panel

You will access the **Sections [Tiki Config](#)** Panel, as shown in this graphics:



## Blog settings



### Blogs

From the Tiki Config Panel, click the Blogs icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

**Blog settings**

Home Blog (main blog)

**Blog features**

Rankings:

Blog level comments:

Post level comments:

Spellchecking:

Default ordering for blog listing:

In blog listing show user as:

**Blog listing configuration (when listing available blogs)**

title

description

creation date

last modification time

user

posts

visits

activity

**Blog comments settings**

Default number of comments per page:

Comments default ordering:

### Home Blog (main blog)

The Home Blog will have the following properties:

- If not selected it will default to the first blog created.

- It's where you go if you click on blogs in the main menu (without expanding the menu).
- It's where you go as the home page if you select the home page to be a blog (in the general settings).

### Blog features

Enable/disable rankings/comments and you can select which is the Home Blog.

### Blog listings configuration

### Blog comments settings

### From Here

- 🐾 Learn how to administer daily TikiWiki's blog functions in [Blogs Admin?](#)
- 🐾 Curious to see what's under the hood? See [Blogs Ref](#) for the details.

---

### Blogs Ref

# Blogs Details

- [Blogs Details](#)
  - [Modules](#)
  - [Permissions](#)
  - [Preferences](#)
  - [Files used](#)
  - [Database](#)

### Modules

The blogs activity can be used by some modules, mostly using rankings features :

module name	usage
last_blog_posts	
last_created_blogs	
last_modified_blogs	

top\_active\_blogs  
top\_visited\_blogs  
user\_blogs

## Permissions

Perm Name	Default Level	Description
tiki_p_create_blogs	editors	Can create a blog
tiki_p_blog_post	registered	Can post to a blog
tiki_p_blog_admin	editors	Can admin blogs
tiki_p_read_blog	basic	Can read blogs
tiki_p_admin	admin	Administrator

## Preferences

Pref name in tiki_preferences table	default value	comment
blog_comments_default_ordering	points_desc	
blog_comments_per_page	10	
blog_list_activity	y	
blog_list_created	y	
blog_list_description	y	
blog_list_lastmodif	y	
blog_list_order	created_desc	
blog_list_posts	y	
blog_list_title	y	
blog_list_user	y	
blog_list_visits	y	
blog_spellcheck	n	
feature_blog_comments	n	
feature_blogposts_comments	n	
feature_blog_rankings	y	
feature_blogs	n	
max_rss_blog	10	
max_rss_blogs	10	
rss_blog	n	
rss_blogs	y	

## Files used

Main files	tiki-blog_post.php
	templates/tiki-blog_post.tpl
	tiki-blog_rankings.php
	templates/tiki-ranking.tpl
	tiki-edit_blog.php
	templates/tiki-edit_blog.tpl
	tiki-list_blogs.php
	templates/tiki-list_blogs.tpl
	tiki-print_blog_post.php
	templates/tiki-print_blog_post.tpl

	tiki-send_blog_post.php templates/tiki-send_blog_post.tpl tiki-view_blog.php templates/tiki-view_blog.tpl tiki-view_blog_post.php templates/tiki-view_blog_post.tpl tiki-view_blog_post_image.php tiki-blog_rss.php tiki-blogs_rss.php
Admin	tiki-admin_include_blogs.php templates/tiki-admin-include-blogs.tpl
Libs	lib/blogs/bloglib.php lib/tikilib.php lib/searchlib.php lib/admin/adminlib.php lib/calendar/calendarlib.php lib/categories/categlib.php lib/hawhaw/hawtikilib.php lib/rankings/ranklib.php lib/search/refresh.php lib/search/searchlib.php lib/stats/statslib.php lib/searchlib.php <i>obsolete</i>
Modules	modules/mod-last_blog_posts.php templates/modules/mod-last_blog_posts.tpl modules/mod-last_created_blogs.php templates/modules/mod-last_created_blogs.tpl modules/mod-last_modified_blogs.php templates/modules/mod-last_modified_blogs.tpl modules/mod-top_active_blogs.php templates/modules/mod-top_active_blogs.tpl modules/mod-top_visited_blogs.php templates/modules/mod-top_active_blogs.tpl modules/mod-user_blogs.php templates/modules/mod-top_active_blogs.tpl
Misc files	templates/mail/blogs_send_link.tpl templates/mail/user_watch_blog_post.tpl
Related images	img/custom/weblog.jpeg img/custom/weblog3.jpeg img/custom/weblogs.jpeg img/custom/weblogs2.jpeg img/icons/admin_blogs.png

## Database

Table	Usage
tiki_blog_activity	
tiki_blog_posts	
tiki_blog_posts_images	
tiki_blogs	



## File Galleries

# File Galleries

## Feature Overview

From Here

- 

Useful Links

---

## File Galleries User

# File Galleries User

The file galleries section of Tiki is a download manager, you can create/edit file galleries which are collections of files, you can define with the permission system who can create file galleries, upload files and download files. Statistics are recorded for each download, rankings where defined for the top downloaded files, most visited file galleries and last uploaded files. Modules are also available to display last changed file galleries, last uploaded files, top downloaded files and top visited file galleries.

You can use file galleries to distribute free multimedia (mp3, avis, etc), to distribute software (versions, patches, releases), to add files that users can download from Wiki pages, articles or weblog posts, etc.



If you enable the file galleries section from the admin menu you'll see a menu section in the main menu for file galleries. From the menu according to the permissions you have you will be able to list existing file galleries (where you can create a new gallery) or upload a file to a gallery.

A file gallery is just a collection of files that can be downloaded, files are kept in the

Tiki database and the number of downloads for each file are registered.

The List galleries option in the main menu will take you to the following screen:

## Listing file galleries



From this screen you can create a new gallery, edit existing galleries, remove existing galleries, upload a file to a gallery or list the contents (files) of an existing gallery. The options you see as a user depend on the permissions the admins have set for your groups.

## Creating file galleries

To create a new file gallery click the create new gallery link and the following form will be displayed.



The same form is displayed to edit an existing gallery, you have to fill the gallery name, a description and the maximum number of rows (files) that will be displayed for each page in the file gallery listing.

You can make a gallery invisible to normal users unchecking the gallery is visible to non-admin users checkbox. This can be used to set-up galleries that can't be browsed but contain files that you will make available for downloading in your site using direct links to download the file.

If you want to allow uploads to this gallery from other users check the checkbox above the edit/create button. If the checkbox is not checked then only the gallery creator or admins can upload files to the gallery.

## Uploading files

To upload a file you use the following form:



In this form you enter a title and description for the file, the gallery where the file will be stored and then the file from your local disk to upload. If everything goes well you will see a message indicating that the file was uploaded.

file:///home/franck/

## Batch uploads

If you have the right permission to batch file uploads then you will be able to make a batch upload of files by uploading a .zip file to the gallery and checking the batch-upload checkbox (if you don't check it the zip is uploaded as a single file).

Note that you must only give batch uploading permissions to admin since if users can make batch uploads the results can be unpredictable.

Once you have some files uploaded to the gallery you can visit the gallery from the gallery listing menu and see the uploaded files:

## Listing file galleries and downloading files

file:///home/franck/

From this screen you will see the gallery description and the files uploaded to this gallery (the number of files per page varies), you can order the list by any of the columns in the listing. Clicking the get link in the actions column will download the file to your local disk.

## Permissions

The following permissions can be set for the file galleries section:

file:///home/franck/

The `tiki_p_admin_file_galleries` is a master permission that automatically includes the other 4 permissions.

---

## File Galleries Config

# File Galleries Config

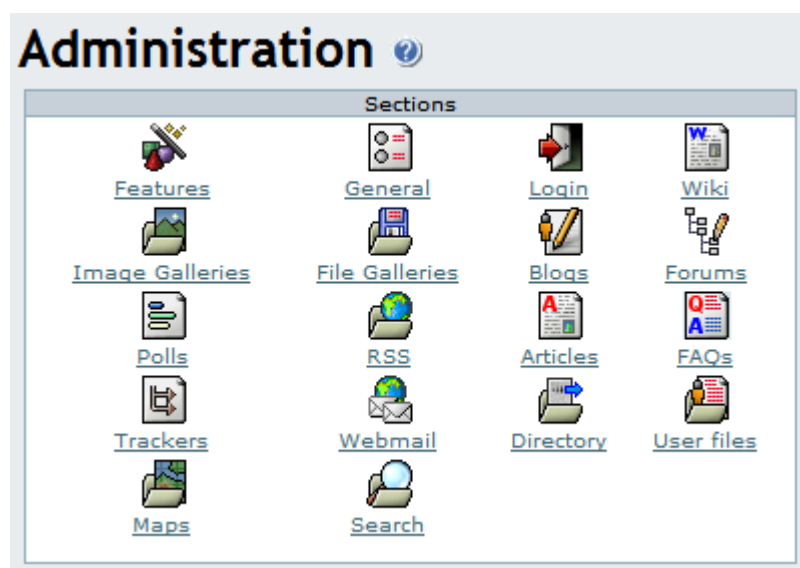
- File Galleries Config
  - Admin Access
  - Sections: Tiki Admin Panel
  - File galleries
    - Storing files on the database:
    - Storing files on a directory
    - Filtering file uploads
    - Filename must match:
    - Filename must not match:
    - File galleries search indexing

## Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **Menu** , click on "**Admin (click!)**".

## Sections: Tiki Admin Panel

You will access the **Sections** Tiki Admin Panel , as shown in this graphics:



## File galleries



### File galleries

From the Tiki Admin Panel, click the File galleries icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

Clicking the **File Galleries** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see TikiAdminSettings ) takes you to the File Galleries settings.



This panel is almost identical to the image galleries panel<sup>?</sup>. Select the home file gallery, the comment settings for file galleries and if rankings/comments are used or not for file galleries.

There's an important setting for the file galleries: the storage strategy for files. You can choose one of two options to store file gallery files:

- Store files on the database
- Store files on a directory

The differences and settings needed for each option are explained below:

#### Storing files on the database:

If you decide to store files on the database then each file data will be stored on a database column (field) this has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- You don't need to configure anything else.
- You may have problems if you plan to store large files
- The database can grow a lot making more difficult to make backups/dumps

#### Storing files on a directory

If you decide to store files on a directory you must indicate the path to a directory where you will store files. The directory can be absolute or relative to the Tiki directory for example:

```
files/  
/www/tiki/files/
```

/home/tiki/files/  
files/uploads/  
can be configured as directories.  
Before 1.8.1, ending "/" was mandatory.

Storing files on a directory has the following advantages and disadvantages

- You must configure properly a directory to store files
- You can upload files of any size (if you have space)

You must ensure that:

- The configured directory exists and PHP (Apache) can read/write it
- For security, only Tiki can read or access the contents of that directory. Do that with one of the two following options.  
**[+]**
  - Use a directory outside the webserver DocumentRoot (so the users won't be able to list the directory)
  - Use a directory inside the DocumentRoot (relative to the Tiki dir for example) and prevent listing the directory using a .htaccess file or other configuration depending on your webserver.

You may need to ask your ISP/hosting service for an upload strategy and instructions if the ISP/hosting allows uploads (some PHP's have file uploads disabled for unknown reasons, maybe to prevent disk space consuming). Since Tiki can be configured to store files on the database or a directory if there's a way to handle uploads then Tiki can use it :-)) choose the strategy that is best for you.

### **Filtering file uploads**

You can set up filters for filenames so filenames will be checked and maybe rejected depending on their filenames. Filters are regular expressions perl-like without the // delimiters.

#### **Filename must match:**

A regular expression that must be matched to accept the file example [A-Za-z]\* (filename can only have a-z letters)

#### **Filename must not match:**

A regular expression that if matched rejects the file, example \.gif (rejects gif images note that the period must be escaped since we are using regular expressions) If you don't know anything about regular expressions just leave the

fields blank and all the files will be accepted.

### File galleries search indexing

If you want the files content of your files galleries to be accessible by a TikiWiki search, and if you have a script that extracts the file content into a text, you can associate the script to the Mime type and the files content will be indexed.

For a Linux server an example is

MIME Type	System command
application/msword	/usr/local/bin/catdoc %1 -
application/pdf	/usr/local/bin/pdftotext %1
application/vnd.ms-excel	/usr/local/bin/xls2csv %1
application/vnd.ms-powerpoint	/usr/local/bin/catppt %1
text/html	strings %1
text/plain	strings %1

This requires the programs specified above (catdoc, pdftotext, xls2csv and catppt) to be manually loaded on the Linux server.

---

## File Galleries Details

---

### Forums

# Forums

### Feature Overview

Welcome to one of the most interesting features in Tiki: the forums system, the concepts are very simple:

- A forum is a collection of topics (also called **threads**) about a subject. You can have a forum to discuss a product, movies, sports, the weather; anything you think of.
- A topic/thread is a collection of messages (also called **posts**) in a particular forum.
- A post/message is a message a user has submitted about a particular topic.

name	topics	posts	ppd	last post	visits
<b>About tikiwiki.org</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>That forum is dedicated to open discussions about the website tikiwiki.org ONLY, its usability, configuration, and features. It can be used to suggest something or to ask for comments, if you want to declare a bug or a typo use the track...</i>	8	23	0.37	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [12:37] <i>Re:IE 5.0 crashes</i> by patvdu	1393
TikiWiki development					
<b>Tikiwiki Development</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>Forum for developers to discuss future features and releases.</i>	12	36	0.59	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [06:52] <i>Re:There needs to be a COMMENT # feature</i> by Chealer9	690
<b>Tikiwiki Documentation</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>This will be the place we figure out how to most effectively use TikiWiki to create effective and easily distributable documentation. Topics may include howtos, content standards, printing utilities, incorporating graphics and other obj...</i>	4	8	0.13	Sat 30 of Aug, 2003 [00:05] <i>Re:New templates</i> by jbutler	751
<b>Tikiwiki SF Trackers</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>(Read-only) view on the sourceForge bug trackers. Please do not post in this forum!</i>	725	725	22.66	Tue 05 of Aug, 2003 [05:11] by	753
Tikiwiki support					
<b>Tikiwiki Architecture/Installation</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>Issues related to: hardware, OS, webserver, mysql, Tiki installation</i>	23	70	23.33	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:16] <i>Re:Gallery problem, image won't show</i> by patvdu	417
<b>Tikiwiki Features/Usability</b> <a href="#">adm</a> <i>Discussion about features and usability of Tiki.</i>	58	179	3.20	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:08] <i>Re:Creating a Publishable Document from Wikis</i> by patvdu	3018

From Here

Useful Links

## Forums User

# Forums User

## User Documentation

The forums menu in the application menu displays 2 links, one to the forum listing and another to the forum rankings. If you are admin you will be able to configure forums from the admin-forums screen in the administration menu. Let's go to the admin forums screen to create a forum:

```
[ - ] Forums [ + ]
List forums
Rankings
Admin forums
```

# Creating/editing forums

The admin forums screen show a list of available forums and a form to create/edit a new forum, the form has the following format:



Name:	<input type="text"/>												
Description:	<input type="text"/>												
Show description:	<input type="checkbox"/>												
Prevent flooding:	<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum time between posts: <input type="text" value="2 mins"/>												
Topics per page:	<input type="text" value="20"/>												
Section:	<input type="text" value="None"/>												
Moderator user:	<input type="text" value="admin"/>												
Moderator group:	<input type="text" value="None"/>												
Password protected	<input type="text" value="No"/>												
Forum password	<input type="text"/>												
categorize	<a href="#">[ show categories   hide categories ]</a>												
Default ordering for topics:	<input type="text" value="Date (desc)"/>												
Default ordering for threads:	<input type="text" value="Date (desc)"/>												
<input type="checkbox"/> Send this forums posts to this email:	<input type="text"/>												
<input type="checkbox"/> Prune unreplied messages after:	<input type="text" value="30 days"/>												
<input type="checkbox"/> Prune old messages after:	<input type="text" value="30 days"/>												
Topic list configuration	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Replies</th> <th>Reads</th> <th>Points</th> <th>Last post</th> <th>author</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Replies	Reads	Points	Last post	author	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Replies	Reads	Points	Last post	author									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>									
Threads can be voted	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>												
Forward messages to this forum to this email	<input type="text"/>												
Add messages from this email to the forum	POP3 server: <input type="text"/> User: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/>												
Use topic smileys	<input type="checkbox"/>												
Show topic summary	<input type="checkbox"/>												
User information display	<table> <tr> <td>avatar</td> <td>flag</td> <td>posts</td> <td>user level</td> <td>email</td> <td>online</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table>	avatar	flag	posts	user level	email	online	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
avatar	flag	posts	user level	email	online								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>								
Approval type	<input type="text" value="All posted"/>												
Attachments	<input type="text" value="No attachments"/> Store attachments in: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Database <input type="radio"/> Directory (include trailing slash): <input type="text"/> Max attachment size (bytes): <input type="text" value="1000000"/>												
	<input type="button" value="Save"/>												

The fields are described next:

Name	The forum name as it will be displayed in the forum listing
Description	A description for the forum
Prevent flooding	Requires users to wait the specified time between posts. This can be used to prevent a user from flooding the forum with messages/posts.
Topics per page	The number of threads/topics that will be displayed in one page when listing the forum threads/topics.
Section	Forums can be organized into sections, you can assign an existing section to a forum, create a new section or don't use a section. When listing forums they will be grouped by section.
Moderator user	Defines a single user to be set as forum moderator. When a user is set as moderator he/she will be granted all the permissions for this forum.
Moderator group	Same as <i>Moderator user</i> but this time for a whole usergroup.

Default ordering for topics	Specifies how threads/topics will be ordered in the thread list by default. Options are: <i>Date</i> : Creation date of the topic; <i>Replies</i> : Number of replies (messages) the topic has; <i>Reads</i> : Number of times the topic has been read; <i>Last post</i> : Date of the last post in the topic. (the last message posted); <i>Title</i> : topic title.
Default ordering for messages	Determines how messages/posts of a thread/topic will be ordered by default when viewing an individual thread/topic. The options are: <i>Date</i> : message date; <i>Title</i> : message title; <i>Score</i> : Message score.
Send this forum posts to this email	You can configure an email address that will receive all the topics and messages posted to the forum
Prune unreplyed messages after	If enabled threads/topics that do not have any replies will be automatically removed after the amount of time indicated
Prune old messages after	If enabled threads/topics and posts/messages will be automatically removed when they are older than the indicated amount of time .
Topic list configuration	Specifies which thread/topic properties should be displayed when viewing the thread list
Threads can be voted	Allows users to vote on a thread by assigning points from 1 to 5
Forward messages to this forum to this email	Allows you to have all new messages in a forum to be copied by email to the specified email address
Add messages from this email to this forum	This option configures the so-called <b>mail-in</b> feature that allows anyone to post a message on the forum by means of sending an email with the desired post content to the specified email address. It is required to have a valid POP3 mail account on a server from which Tiki can check and retrieve the email messages. By specifying the username and password for the email account all messages will be downloaded automagically.
Use topic smileys	Allows you to specify a smiley when posting a new thread or topic
Show topic summary	Displays the short description underneath the thread/topic title of the thread/topic summary
User information display	Specifies which user details should be shown when viewing a thread
Approval type	Specifies whether or not you wish to work with a <b>moderator queue</b> . By selecting <i>All posted</i> no approval is required. When selecting <i>Queue anonymous posts</i> only posts from non forum members will be queued for approval. Finally when opting for <i>Queue all posts</i> any new posts in the forum will not be displayed until it has been approved.
Attachment	Specifies whether you want to allow users posting attachments with their posts/messages and whether these should be stored in the Tiki database or on the local file system. By defining a <i>max attachment size</i> you can avoid users from posting attachments that are larger than the specified threshold.

Once a forum is created you can see it displayed in the listing:

name	topics	coms	users	age	ppd	hits	action
About tikiwiki.org	8	23	12	63	0.37	1393	
Tikiwiki SF Trackers	725	725	3	32	22.66	753	
Tikiwiki Documentation	4	8	4	61	0.13	751	
Tikiwiki Development	12	36	15	61	0.59	690	
Tikiwiki Features/Usability	58	179	58	56	3.20	3019	
Tikiwiki Architecture/Installation	23	70	31	3	23.33	417	

The edit link can be used to edit the forum while the perms link can be used to set-up individual permissions for the forum.

## Using the forum

As a user you can enter the forums section clicking the forums link in the application menu.

- [-] Forums [+]
- List forums
- Rankings
- Admin forums

You can order the forum listing as you want and you can click on the forum name to enter the forum.

When you enter to a forum a list of topics will be displayed:

moderator actions									
queued messages:0									
	type	title		replies	reads	pts	last post	author	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Creating a Publishable Document from Wikis		1	7	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:08] <i>Re:Creating a Publishable Document from Wikis by patvdu</i>	nehal	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Problems with first post in a forum		1	4	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:06] <i>Re:Problems with first post in a forum by patvdu</i>	nehal	
<input type="checkbox"/>		User permissions in galleries		1	8	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:04] <i>Re:User permissions in galleries by patvdu</i>	bzahn	
<input type="checkbox"/>		RSS links		12	55	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [11:03] <i>Re:Re:RSS links by patvdu</i>	elgerts	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Features missing in install?		8	36	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [10:55] <i>Re:Re:MULTILANGUAGE by patvdu</i>	elgerts	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Add a new user in Tiki v1.7.1.1 doing nothing		3	28	0.00	Fri 05 of Sep, 2003 [07:45] <i>Re:Add a new user in Tiki v1.7.1.1 doing nothing by jim</i>	jim	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Integration		5	65	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [23:34] <i>Re:Integration by patvdu</i>	rickdier	
<input type="checkbox"/>		relative images path and importing dumps		5	27	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [23:20] <i>Re:relative images path and importing dumps by patvdu</i>	interseb	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Enable Shoutbox on Right Side?		3	11	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [23:19] <i>Re:Enable Shoutbox on Right Side? by patvdu</i>	v3ggi32u	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Mobile		2	14	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [18:59] <i>Re:Re:Mobile by paperoz007</i>	paperoz007	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Logo on top and width		1	11	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [14:48] <i>Re:Logo on top and width by patvdu</i>	paperoz007	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Articles in the Nwl		0	3	0.00	Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [13:46]	paperoz007	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Flash integration		1	21	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [18:58] <i>Re:Flash integration by gmuslera</i>	rroberts	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Menu Not Showing		7	32	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [18:58] <i>Re:Re:Menu Not Showing by mchurchward</i>	mchurchward	
<input type="checkbox"/>		how to CSS edit		2	19	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [15:36] <i>Re:how to CSS edit by patvdu</i>	bnuz	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Customizing User Registration		1	35	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [13:11] <i>Re:Customizing User Registration by patvdu</i>	hetulk	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Bug In Admin Calendars		1	10	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [13:02] <i>Re:Bug In Admin Calendars by patvdu</i>	BeastRider	
<input type="checkbox"/>		How to change first day of week?		3	20	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [12:45] <i>Re:How to change first day of week? by patvdu</i>	mburger	
<input type="checkbox"/>		Allow HTML in Wiki default to checked?		1	8	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [01:01] <i>Re:Allow HTML in Wiki default to checked? by patvdu</i>	terris	
<input type="checkbox"/>		VERY SLOW: edit page with ext. links		1	7	0.00	Wed 03 of Sep, 2003 [00:38] <i>Re:VERY SLOW: edit page with ext. links by patvdu</i>	kaizensws	

Topics are listed using the default ordering for topics set for the forum, as a user you can order the topics by any of the fields in the topic listing. The type is used to

classify topics (more on this later). When the type icon is shown reddish (as in this case) the topic is new for the user. If you have the permission to post a topic you will see a link to display/hide the form to post a new topic. This is the form when displayed:

[\[Show Post Form\]](#) | [\[Hide Post Form\]](#) | [\[RSS feed\]](#) | [\[Forum List\]](#) | [\[Edit Forum\]](#) ]

The screenshot shows a forum post form with the following elements:








- Post**: Buttons for 'preview' and 'post'.
- Title**: A text input field.
- Type**: A dropdown menu currently set to 'normal'.
- Quicklinks**: A toolbar with icons for bold, italic, underline, link, unlink, list, image, and other formatting options.
- Comment**: A large text area for entering the post content.
- Attach file**: A text input field and a 'Browse...' button.
- smileys**: A vertical panel on the right containing various smiley icons.

You will have to enter the title for the topic, the type and the comment (the topic text), you can use some smileys shown at the right if you want. The topic-type that you can set will be normal unless you are an admin for this forum, in which case you can use any type. Topics type are described next:

Type	Icon	Description
Normal		A normal topic
Hot		A hot topic, a topic that is very important or polemical or anything you consider hot
Announce		An announcement
Sticky		A sticky topic will be displayed on top of the list of topics regardless of the ordering selected for topics.
Locked		A locked topic is a topic where users cannot post messages, admins can lock a topic by changing the type of any topic to locked





















If you click on the topic name for any topic a list of topic messages will be displayed:



 rickdier ? posts:5 ☆☆☆☆☆	<b>Integration</b> I'm already using IPB forums to a high level of satisfaction, but thinking on integrating Tikiwiki with it. How do I use single sign on for tikiwiki, IPB forums and other applications not included with tiki. (job board, dating, ads,...)?	   
 	on: Sun 17 of Aug, 2003 [21:21] score: 0.00 <b>Vote:</b> 1 2 3 4 5 reads: 66	

[[Show Post Form](#) | [Hide Post Form](#)] [[prev topic](#) | [next topic](#)]

Comments 20	Sort Date	Threshold All	Search	set	Top
-------------	-----------	---------------	--------	-----	-----

<b>Moderator actions</b>		
delete selected    Move to topic: <input type="text" value="release_eta_carinea_rc1"/> <input type="button" value="move"/> queued:0		
<b>author</b>	<b>message</b>	
 patvdv 🇧🇪 posts:81 ☆☆☆☆☆	<b>Re: Integration</b> I am not a Tiki expert neither very knowledgeable about the Nuke softwares. However, I would say that Tiki is very different both in concepts and architecture. One important factor would be to see how different the data models of both application are.  Regards,  Pat.	     
  	on: Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [23:34]    score: 0.00 <b>Vote:</b> 1 2 3 4 5	
 rickdier ? posts:5 ☆☆☆☆☆	<b>Re: Integration</b> this link ( <a href="http://mods.ibplanet.com/db/?mod=1755">http://mods.ibplanet.com/db/?mod=1755</a> ) addresses the php-nuke/invision forums integration. How similar is php-nuke to tikiwiki and how easy would it be to modify this tool to integrate tikiwiki to invision forums? The question may be stupid, but I'd better ask	     
  	on: Thu 04 of Sep, 2003 [00:16]    score: 0.00 <b>Vote:</b> 1 2 3 4 5	

From this screen you can post new messages (if you have the permission), edit or remove messages (again if you have the permission) and quote a message if you want. The form to post a message for a topic is almost identical to the form used to post a new topic.

The toolbar can be used to sort messages by date, score or title, limit the minimum score for a message to be displayed (threshold) or find messages containing some word.

## Setting Global forum permissions

From the admin groups screen you can set up the global permissions for the forums:

update

[ All | **General** | Wiki | File gals | Comments | Blogs | Image gals | Forums | Comm | Games | Quizzes ]  
 [ Cms | FAQs | User | Chat | Content Templates | Shoutbox | Drawings | HTML pages | Trackers ]  
 [ Surveys | Webmail | Newsletters | Messages | DSN | Directory | Workflow | Charts | ExtWikis | Live support | Calendar ]

	name	level	type	desc
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_admin_forum	editors	forums	Can admin forums
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_post	registered	forums	Can post in forums
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_post_topic	registered	forums	Can start threads in forums
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_read	basic	forums	Can read forums
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_vote	registered	forums	Can vote comments in forums
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forums_report	registered	forums	Can report msgs to moderator
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_attach	registered	forums	Can attach to forum posts
<input type="checkbox"/>	tiki_p_forum_autoapp	editors	forums	Auto approve forum posts

## Setting Individual permissions for a forum

From the admin forums screen you can click on the perms link to set up individual permissions for a forum.

	12	36	15	61	0.59	690			
bility	58	179	58	56	3.20	3021			
Installation	23	70	31	3	23.33	417			

Setting individual permissions can be used to have private forums, to control who can post new topics in some special forums, to give admin privileges to a group of user only for some forums, etc. As usual when individual permissions are set for a forum global permissions don't apply.

## Forum Rankings

The forum rankings screen can be used to display rankings for the forums.

Forums last topics (Topic date)		
1)	Tikiwiki SF Trackers: [ tikiwiki-Feature Requests-797426 ] XForms - The Next Generation of Web Forms	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [12:20:46 UTC]
2)	Tikiwiki SF Trackers: [ tikiwiki-Feature Requests-800857 ] Rename Wiki page should preserve watches	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [05:19:32 UTC]
3)	Tikiwiki Architecture/Installation: Install problem with current CVS	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [04:13:41 UTC]
4)	Tikiwiki Architecture/Installation: Gallery problem, image won't show	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [02:40:04 UTC]
5)	Tikiwiki Features/Usability: User permissions in galleries	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [02:39:43 UTC]
6)	Tikiwiki Architecture/Installation: Problems with GD and/or Imagick on Win2K/IIS server	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [01:57:28 UTC]
7)	Tikiwiki SF Trackers: [ tikiwiki-Bugs-800795 ] Cache: Does Not Work With Frames?	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [01:56:31 UTC]
8)	<a href="#">Tikiwiki SF Trackers: [ tikiwiki-Bugs-800792 ] Directory: Sorts Only One Page of Results</a>	Friday 05 of September, 2003 [01:56:30 UTC]
9)	Tikiwiki Features/Usability: Problems with first post in a forum	Thursday 04 of September, 2003 [22:45:56 UTC]
10)	Tikiwiki Features/Usability: Creating a Publishable Document from Wikis	Thursday 04 of September, 2003 [22:43:06 UTC]

For more information

## Forums Admin

# Forums Admin



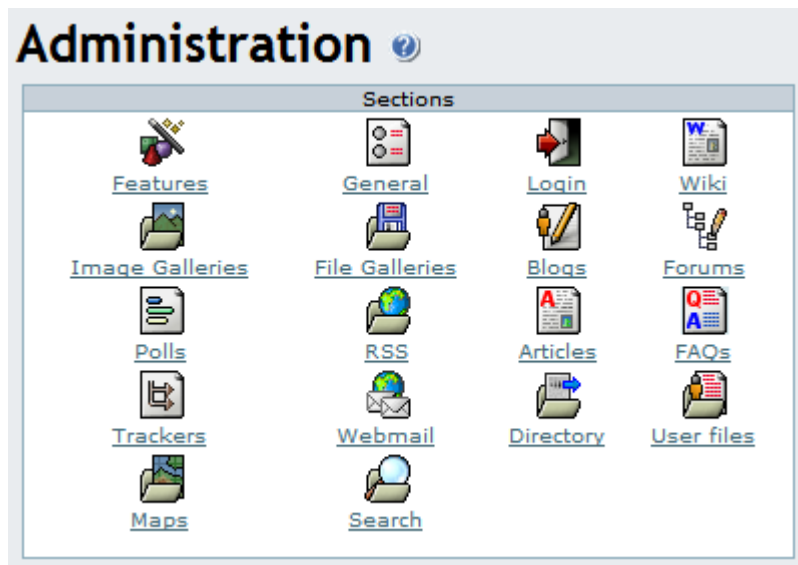
- **Forums Admin**
  - **Admin Access #1**
  - **Sections: Tiki Config Panel**
  - **Forums**
  - **Admin Access #2**
  - **Perms on forum posts and topics**

## Admin Access #1

To access administration, go to the **Home Page** and, on the **Menu**, click "**Admin (click!)**".

## Sections: Tiki Config Panel

You will access the **Sections Tiki Config Panel** (see **Tiki Config**), as shown in this graphics:



## Forums



Forums

From the **Tiki Config** Panel, click the Forums icon to display its settings panel.

From this panel you can control which forum will be used as the Home forum, if rankings will be used or not for the forums and the default ordering for forums in the forum listing.

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/ForumSettings.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/ForumSettings.png) picture not found <img/icons/ForumSettings.png>

## Admin Access #2

To access administration, go to this page:

[http://www.yoursitename.org/tiki-admin\\_forums.php](http://www.yoursitename.org/tiki-admin_forums.php)

## Perms on forum posts and topics

- to view a post, you need **tiki\_p\_forum\_read**
- to post a topic, you need **tiki\_p\_forum\_post\_topic**
- to post a post (answer to a topic), you need **tiki\_p\_forum\_post**
- to edit a topic or a post, you need **tiki\_p\_forum\_post** and to **be the author**
- to remove a topic or a post, you need **tiki\_p\_admin\_forum**



Of course a **tiki\_p\_admin\_forum** or tiki\_p\_admin can do whatever he wants

---

## Forums Details

---

## Directory

# Directory

## Feature Overview

From Here

- 

Useful Links

---

## Directory User

# Directory User

---

## Directory Admin

# Directory Admin

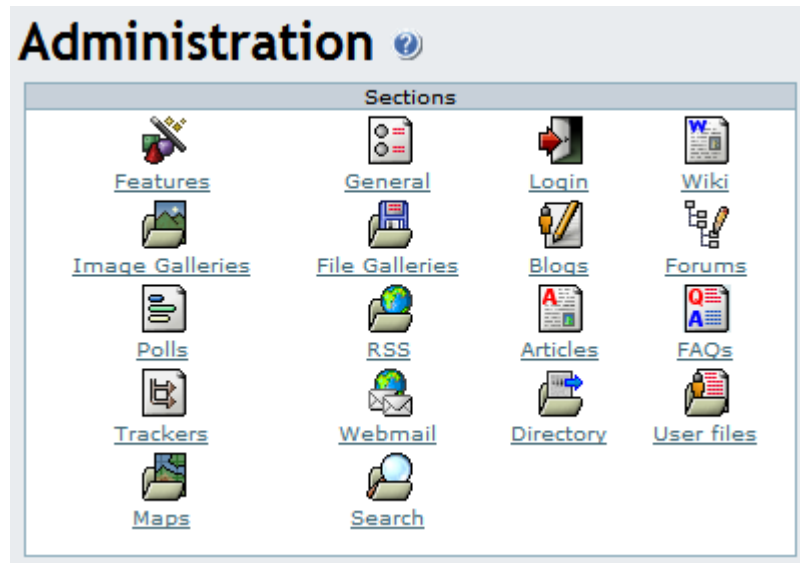
- Directory Admin
  - Admin Access
  - Sections: Tiki Admin Panel
  - Directory

## Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **(Main) Menu** , click on **"Admin (click!)"** .

## Sections: Tiki Admin Panel

You will access the **Sections** Tiki Admin Panel , as shown in this graphics:



## Directory



Directory

From the Tiki Admin Panel, click the Directory icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

---

## Directory Details

---

## FAQs

# FAQs

## Feature Overview

From Here

- 

Useful Links

---

## FAQs User

# FAQs User

---

## FAQs Admin

# FAQs Admin



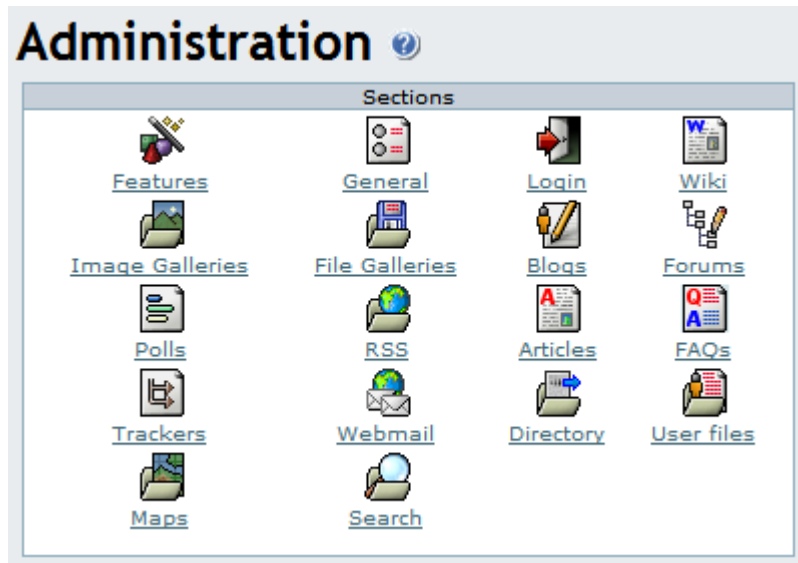
- **FAQs Admin**
  - **Admin Access**
  - **Sections: Tiki Config** Panel
  - **FAQs settings**

## Admin Access

To access administration, go to **Home Page** and, on the **(Main) Menu** , click on **"Admin (click!)"** .

## Sections: Tiki Config Panel

You will access the **Sections Tiki Config** Panel (see **Tiki Config** ), as shown in this graphics:



## FAQs settings



From the **Tiki Config** Panel, click the FAQs icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/FAQSettings.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/FAQSettings.png){picture file=<img/icons/FAQSettings.png>}

Comments:	Will comments about your questions/answers be allowed? If so, they'll appear at the bottom of the page.
Default number of comments per page:	How many comments should display on the page? Users may override this number.
Comments default ordering	Should comments be ordered by the date they were made or by <i>points</i> . Comments earn points when users read them and vote on their usefulness. Users may override this ordering.

TikiTeam  
Who is working here generally?

tw: [UserPagejbutler](#)

## FAQs Details

## Quizzes

# Quizzes

## Feature Overview

From Here

- 

Useful Links

---

## Quizzes User

# Quizzes User

---

## Quizzes Admin

# Quizzes Admin

- Quizzes Admin
  - Admin Access
    - Admin quizzes
      - Create/edit quizzes

## Admin Access

To access administration, go to this page:

[http://www.yoursitename.org/tiki-edit\\_quiz.php](http://www.yoursitename.org/tiki-edit_quiz.php)

## Admin quizzes



## Quizzes

[Create/edit quizzes](#)

---

## Quizzes Details

---

## Trackers

# Trackers

The Trackers feature is a powerful, flexible tool for recording information about a collection of items. Once you have activated Trackers in your Tiki installation, you can set up a table. The columns, or fields, will contain the data about each row, or item, in the table. You can add, remove and list items that you want to track. You can add comments or attach files to each item tracked. You can assign users and groups to each item and, when the item is opened, it will appear in the user-preferences screen. You can monitor Trackers by email. It is simple to set up Trackers for support tickets, feature requests, purchase orders, bug reports, feedback reports, news submissions and the like. Simple workflows can be modeled using one or more Trackers.

## Feature Overview

The following is a short list of Trackers features:

- Enable or disable the Trackers feature.
- Set display of Trackers fields, such as status or create and modify dates.
- Enable and disable comments.
- Sort by name, dates or number of items.
- Categorize your Trackers.

From Here

- To enable Trackers for your Tiki site, see [General Admin](#).
- To read the user manual for Trackers, see [Trackers User](#).
- To learn about administering Trackers, see [Trackers Admin](#) and [Trackers](#)

## User.

Useful Links

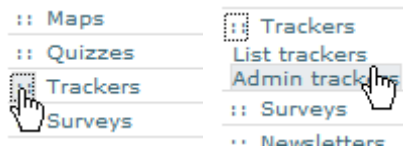
### Trackers User

# Trackers User

## The Menu

When Trackers are enabled and you have the right permissions, a Trackers menu is visible, and can be clicked open. From here you will be able to create and administer your Trackers data collections.

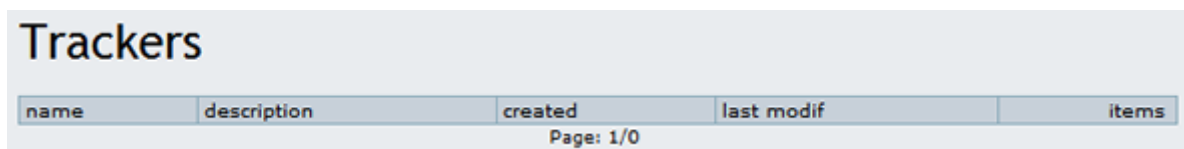
*Collapsed and Expanded Menu:*



There are usually two options in the menu — List Trackers and Admin Trackers — and the options may change depending on your permissions. In this section, let's examine each option in detail.

## Prior to Tracker Creation

Prior to creating a Tracker, clicking on the Trackers menu displays an empty center panel, as shown here:



## Creating a New Tracker

To create a new Tracker, click "Admin Trackers" in the Trackers menu to bring up a center panel like the following one. Create your Tracker by first entering basic information about your Tracker into the form. Here, we can create a simple Tracker for collecting movie reviews.

## Admin trackers

[List trackers](#) [Admin trackers](#)

### Create/edit trackers

Name:	<input type="text" value="Movie Reviews"/>
Description:	<input type="text" value="Rick's movie reviews."/>
Categorize	<a href="#">[ show categories   hide categories ]</a> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Friends &amp; Family</li><li><b>Hobbies</b></li><li>Professional</li></ul> <p>categorize this object: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <a href="#">Admin categories</a>
Show status when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show creation date when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show lastModif date when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow comments?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Tracker items allow attachments?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

The fields are explained in the following table:



Field	Description
Name	Name of the Tracker.
Description	Longer description of the tracker or its purpose.
Categorize	Show and Hide Categories; Add Tracker to a Category.
Admin categories	Add, Remove, Modify Categories.
Show status when listing tracker items?	Show status, or not.
Show creation date when listing tracker items?	Show creation date, or not.
Show lastModif date when listing tracker items?	Show last modified date, or not.
Tracker items allow comments?	Allow comments, or not?
Tracker items allow attachments?	Allow attachments, or not?

Create a Tracker for testing by filling in the form, and clicking Save at the bottom. Once Tiki creates the Tracker, it will be listed like so in both Admin Trackers and List Trackers:



**trackers**

Find

name	description	created	last modif	items	action
<u>Movie Reviews</u>	Rick's movie reviews.	Sun 18 of Jan, 2004 [20:35]	Sun 18 of Jan, 2004 [20:35]	0	   

Page: 1/1  
1

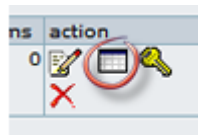
## Actions

If you hover your mouse above each of the Actions icons, you can infer that they link to tools including:

- **Edit**: edit the Tracker information using the same form you used to create the Tracker. Here, you can change Tracker information, its categories, or how to handle comments.
- **Fields**: edit the Tracker's collection of fields.
- **Perms**: configure permissions for the Tracker (if you are an admin).
- **Remove**: remove the entire Tracker and its data. Use this with care, as it is a permanent operation.

## Adding Fields to a Tracker

To make a Tracker useful and usable, you add some fields to it to capture the data you want to collect. You can administer fields by going to the the Trackers list, and clicking the Fields Action.



To add a field, click the Fields action from the Trackers list, then fill in the form that appears indicating the field name, field type, and any applicable options. You can use the following field types:

- Text input
- Textarea input
- Drop down combo (enter options separated by commas)
- Checkbox ("boolean" on/off yes/no true/false fields)
- Date/time field
- User (selectable user from the list of site's users)
- Group (selectable group from the list of site's groups)

At least one of the fields in your Tracker must be the "main" field, which links to the item's details from the Tracker listing. This attribute is controlled by the "Column links to edit/view item?" checkbox. You can also indicate if the field is visible or not in the Tracker item list using the "Is column visible when listing tracker items?" checkbox. If a Tracker has a lot of fields you may want to use this checkbox to remove some of them from the item listing, for easier viewing.

**Admin tracker: Movie Reviews**

List trackers Admin trackers Edit this tracker View this tracker items

### Edit tracker fields

Name:	MovieName
Type:	text field
Is column visible when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Column links to edit/view item?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Save

Some Tracker field types have options you can set. For example, the drop-down field's items are entered separated by commas. In this graphic, you can see this Tracker will track movie reviewers' ratings using a drop-down field, with five "star" rating entries: \*, \*\*, \*\*\*, \*\*\*\*, \*\*\*\*\*. It is easy to think of various creative uses for this powerful tool - problem severity or impact levels, task priority, status, or a client's credit rating.

### Edit tracker fields

Name:	Rating
Type: (Drop down options : list of items separated with commas):	drop down   *, **, ***, ****, *****
Is column visible when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Column links to edit/view item?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Save

Once you have entered several fields, defining their type, options and visibility, you will see a list similar to this one:

### Tracker fields

Find

name	type	isMain	Tbl vis	action
AmazonMedia	i	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
Director	t	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
MovieName	t	y	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
Rating	d	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
Recommended?	c	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
ReleaseDate	f	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
ReviewComments	a	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
ReviewDate	f	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
Reviewer	t	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>
Studio	d	n	y	<a href="#">remove</a> <a href="#">edit</a>

Note in this graphic the "is main" column. A "y" or yes, means you have checked the "Column links to edit/view item?" checkbox. The list also indicates whether a field will be visible in the item listing, and allows you to edit or remove fields accordingly using this list's Actions.

**Hint:** One default field in any tracker is the "Status" field, which tracks whether an item is open or closed. This field is *not* visible in the Fields listing.

## Using Trackers

You can view a list of your Trackers by clicking Trackers from the menu. The center panel will change as such:

### Trackers

name	description	created	last modif	items
<a href="#">Movie Reviews</a>	Rick's movie reviews.	Sun 18 of Jan, 2004 [20:35]	Sun 18 of Jan, 2004 [20:51]	1

Page: 1/1  
1

Clicking on a Tracker's name (here, Movie Reviews) will take you to a screen in which you can add, modify, delete, filter and sort items, and, toggle email monitoring on changes to the Tracker.


### Adding a Tracker Item

To add an item into your Tracker, enter the information into the fields on the form at the top of the screen, and click Save when you are finished:

**Insert new item**

MovieName	Mystic River					
Director	Clint Eastwood					
Studio	Warner					
ReleaseDate	January	01	2004	at	20	46
ReviewDate	January	18	2004	at	20	46
Reviewer	Rick Cogley					
ReviewComments	Sean Penn, Tim Robbins, Kevin Bacon star in this incredible thriller.					
Recommended?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
Rating	*****					
AmazonMedia	MysticRiver.jpg					参照...
save						

After saving, our movie review Tracker now has one review - for the movie Mystic River. In the item list part of the screen, you can see all the visible columns contained in your Tracker, as well as sort by create date, modification date, status, or any other available field.

	MovieName	Director	Studio	ReleaseDate	ReviewDate	Reviewer	ReviewComments	Re
	<b>Mystic River</b> [ X ]	Clint Eastwood	Warner	Thu 01 of Jan, 2004 [20:46]	Sun 18 of Jan, 2004 [20:46]	Rick Cogley	Sean Penn, Tim Robbins, Kevin Bacon star in this incredible thriller.	y

### Item Details

If you have the right permissions, you can click an item's title to bring up a "details screen" for the item, to modify it, or add attachments or comments.

**Hint:** If its title is not "clickable" then you can go to the admin screen and make some field the "main" field by checking the "Column links to edit/view item?" checkbox.

Click the title to display the item details:

View item	
MovieName	Mystic River
Director	Clint Eastwood
Studio	Warner
ReleaseDate	1072957560
ReviewDate	1074426360
Reviewer	Rick Cogley
ReviewComments	Sean Penn, Tim Robbins, Kevin Bacon star in this incredible thriller.
Recommended?	y
Rating	*****
AmazonMedia	MysticRiver.jpg

If attachments or comments are enabled, you can add them to your Tracker's items.

**Add a comment**

Title: Hamlet Scene

Comment: I liked the "Hamlet" scene.

save

**Comments**

### Assigning Items to Specific Tiki Users or Groups

If you set up your Tracker with fields of type "user selector" or "group selector," you will be able to easily select from a drop-down list the users or groups registered on your Tiki site. First, we must change the Reviewer field in our Movie Review Tracker to be of type "user selector".

## Admin tracker: Movie Reviews

List trackers Admin trackers Edit this tracker View this tracker items

### Edit tracker fields

Name:	Reviewer
Type:	User selector
Is column visible when listing tracker items?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Column links to edit/view item?	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

Once that is done, we can choose from the users on the site while editing the item.

## Editing tracker item

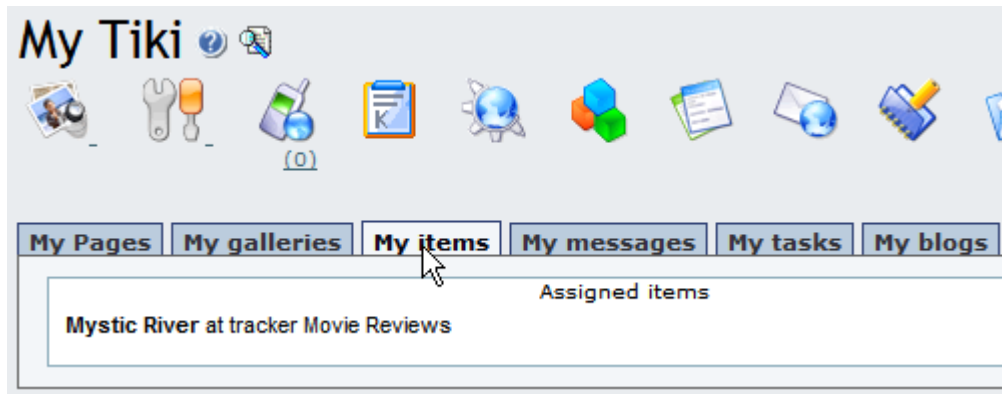
List trackers Admin trackers Monitor View this tracker items

View Comments Attachments Edit

### Edit item

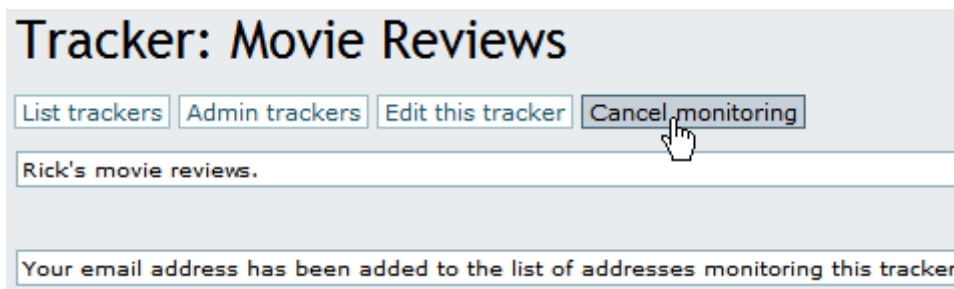
Status	open
MovieName	Mystic River
Director	Clint Eastwood
Studio	Warner
ReleaseDate	January 01 2004 at 20 46
ReviewDate	January 18 2004 at 20 46
Reviewer	None
ReviewComments	None, Tim Robbins, Kevin Bacon star ed the thriller.
Recommended?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rating	*****
AmazonMedia	
<input type="button" value="save"/>	

Tracker Items are always added with their built-in status field set to "open." Items with "open" status, which have been assigned to either your user account or your group, will be displayed in your My Tiki screen.



### Monitoring Tracker Items

In the details screen, users can choose to monitor a Tracker, so that an email is sent by Tiki to the user, whenever the item is modified. Click the "Monitor" button to toggle monitoring off and on.



### Setting Tracker Permissions

Permissions can be set to control access to Trackers. Note that you can set permissions globally or on a per-Tracker level. Assign permissions by clicking the "perms" link from the Tracker listing in the Tracker admin screen.

### Assign permissions to Tracker Movie Reviews

[back](#)

**Current permissions for this object:**

group	permission	action
No individual permissions global permissions apply		

**Assign permissions to this object**

to group:

- tiki\_p\_view\_trackers
- tiki\_p\_modify\_tracker\_items
- tiki\_p\_create\_tracker\_items
- tiki\_p\_comment\_tracker\_items
- tiki\_p\_attach\_trackers
- tiki\_p\_admin\_trackers

[More documentation](#)

[Related Information](#)

- To enable Trackers for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- For more information on My Tiki functionality, see [MyTiki](#).
- To specify permissions for Tracker users, see [Permissions Settings](#) for the general procedure.
- To administer Trackers, see [Trackers Admin](#).
- For technical details, see [Trackers Details](#).

[Useful Links](#)

## Trackers Admin



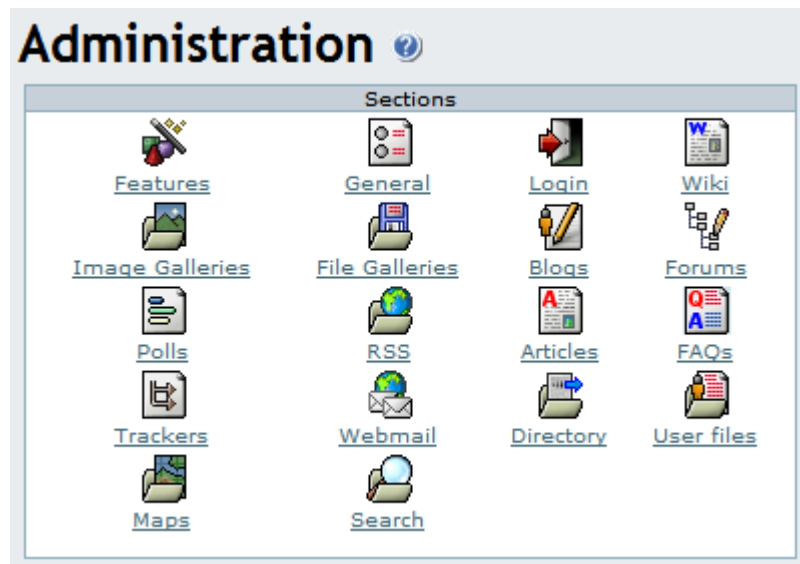
- [Trackers Admin](#)
  - [Trackers Settings Panel](#)
  - [Trackers](#)
  - [Configure Trackers](#)
    - [Use database to store files](#)
    - [Use a directory to store files](#)
  - [Trackers with Mirror Tables](#)



- 1. Explications
- 2. Mise en oeuvre
- 3. Améliorations

## Trackers Settings Panel

To administer Trackers, first click the "**Admin (Click!)**" menu to display the Tiki Admin Panel, as shown in this graphic:

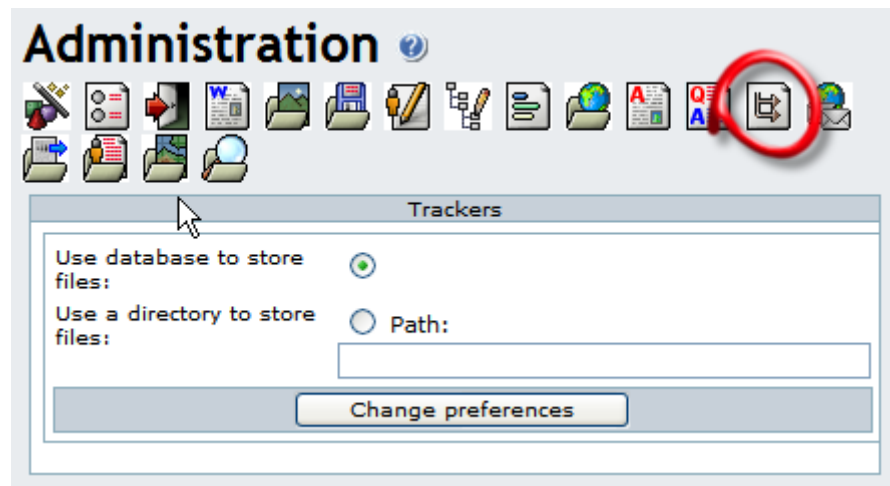


## Trackers



Trackers

From the Tiki Admin Panel, click the Trackers icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:



## Configure Trackers

Trackers can have attached files. In this panel you can set up where to store attached files (if a tracker allows it). You can store attachments in the database or a directory. The directory **path** can be absolute (example: */foo/bar/uploads/*) or relative to the Tiki directory (example: *files/*). The **trailing slash** is mandatory.

Here you can:

- Set the file storage location to either the Tiki database or a directory on your web server's hard disk.

### Use database to store files

### Use a directory to store files

Tracker Attachment Storage: Trackers can be set up to allow file attachments, which will be stored in the either the Tiki database or in a directory on your webserver's hard disk. Storing files inside your database is OK for small files or a low volume of files, but a folder is recommended for a high volume site or when your files are relatively large.

Note the **mandatory** trailing forward slash on the path, shown here in red. The path you specify can be absolute:

`/home/cogley/www/uploads/tikiimg/rm /`

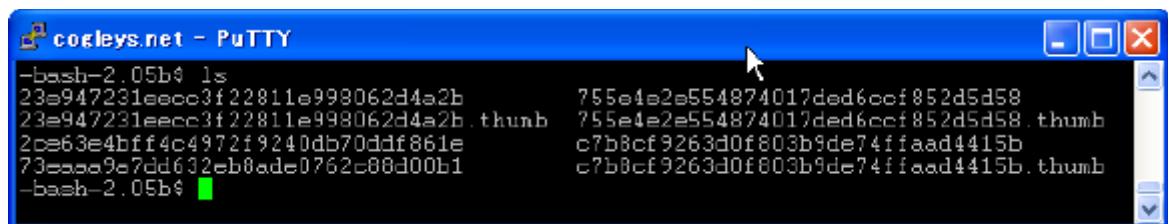
... or relative to your Tiki's install directory:

trackeruploads/

*Path characteristic checklist:*

- Has a trailing slash.
- For best security, is specified from the root, and is in a separate folder from Tiki.
- Has its permissions set (e.g. via the chmod command from the command line or in your FTP client software) to allow uploads by the webserver user.
- Has enough space to allow storage of your expected file volume.

If you take a look at your folder after uploading some images, you can see that Tiki randomizes the filenames, as shown in this graphic:



```
coGLEYS.net - PuTTY
-bash-2.05b$ ls
23e947231eccc3f22811e998062d4a2b      755e4e2e554874017ded6ccf852d5d58
23e947231eccc3f22811e998062d4a2b.thumb 755e4e2e554874017ded6ccf852d5d58.thumb
2ce63e4bff4c4972f9240db70ddf861e     c7b8cf9263d0f803b9de74ffaad4415b
73eaae9e7dd632eb0ade0762c88d00b1     c7b8cf9263d0f803b9de74ffaad4415b.thumb
-bash-2.05b$
```

**Troubleshooting Tip:** If you are having trouble with file uploads, you can edit settings in your php.ini, or, place an .htaccess file in the root of your tiki installation.

# Partial .htaccess file sample.

#

# Override PHP.ini variables, which can be viewed using phpinfo:

```
<IfModule mod_php4.c>
```

```
# If you are using Apache 2, you have to use <IfModule sapi_apache2.c>
```

```
# instead of <IfModule mod_php4.c>.
```

```
php_value max_execution_time 300
php_value upload_max_filesize "10M"
php_value memory_limit "32M"
php_value session.cache_expire 20000
php_value session.gc_maxlifetime 20000
php_value session.cookie_lifetime 20000
</IfModule>
```

# Zero means unlimited request body size:

```
LimitRequestBody 0
```

## Trackers with Mirror Tables

*Introduced in Tiki 1.9.1.* Pending to be translated to English...

### 1. Explications

Le rôle de cette bibliothèque est de pouvoir manipuler les données des formulaires avec des instructions SQL simples en dehors de **TikiWiki**. Donc sans passer par la bibliothèque des trackers et sans avoir à en comprendre le fonctionnement.

Actuellement, les données des champs des formulaires se trouvent dans une seule table qui associe l'id d'un champ, l'id d'un formulaire et la valeur du champ. Cette table n'est pas aisément exploitable hors de TikiWiki.

Voilà à quoi ressemble la table remplie :

table : *tiki\_tracker\_item\_fields*

```
+-----+-----+-----+
|itemId | fieldId | value |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | 7 | a kind of magic |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | 5 | 1986 |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | 8 | artist08 |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | 11 | rock |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | 17 | 0 |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 43 | 7 | mon bel album |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 43 | 5 | 2005 |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 43 | 8 | artist08 |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 43 | 11 | rock |
+-----+-----+-----+
| 43 | 17 | NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+
```

Les formulaires avec tables en miroir utilisent des tables de la forme suivante :

table : *tiki\_trk\_n*

```
+-----+-----+-----+...+-----+
| itemId | field_1 | field_2 | field_3 |...| field_n |
+-----+-----+-----+...+-----+
```

On peut également utiliser des tables avec les nom des champs en clair si on respecte les conventions suivantes :

- Les noms doivent être valide en SQL
- Le nom du tracker doit être unique
- Le nom d'un champ doit être unique pour un tracker donné

Les tables ressemblent alors à ça :

table : *tiki\_trk\_nom\_tracker*

```
+-----+-----+-----+-----+...+-----+
| itemId | nom_champ1 | nom_champ2 | nom_champ3 |...| nom_champn |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+...+-----+
```

Par exemple, voila à quoi ressemble la table pour un formulaire créé avec des noms en clair :

```
mysql> select * from tiki_trk_album;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| itemId | name | year | artist | genre | Rating |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| 42 | a kind of magic | 1986 | artist08 | rock | 0 |
| 43 | mon bel album | 2005 | artist08 | rock | NULL |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

Comparé à l'exemple d'en haut, c'est beaucoup plus facilement exploitable hors de TikiWiki.

## 2. Mise en oeuvre

Pour utiliser les formulaires avec tables en miroir, il faut d'abord activer leur utilisation. Sur la page d'admin, cliquer sur l'icone "Formulaires". Parmi les options disponibles, celle-çi nous intéresse :



On ne peut actuellement pas mélanger les deux types de trackers car il faudrait convertir les tables.

Pour utiliser les noms en clair dans les tables, il faut cocher l'option suivante quand

on créé un formulaire :



### 3. Améliorations

Pour être pleinement utiles, les formulaires fonctionnant de la sorte devrait pouvoir utiliser des tables provenant d'autres bases que celle de TikiWiki, probablement avec les DSN. De plus, il serait bien de pouvoir les utiliser conjointement avec les formulaires classiques.

More documentation

Related Information

- To enable Trackers for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- To specify permissions for Tracker users, see [Permissions Settings](#) for the general procedure.
- For information on using Trackers, see [Trackers User](#).
- For technical details, see [Trackers Details](#).

Useful Links

- Apache WWW Server htaccess tutorial:  
<http://httpd.apache.org/docs/howto/htaccess.html> <sup>o</sup>
- PHP htaccess information:  
<http://jp2.php.net/configuration.changes> <sup>o</sup>
- Absolute Path Glossary Entry  
[http://linux.about.com/cs/linux101/g/absolute\\_path.htm](http://linux.about.com/cs/linux101/g/absolute_path.htm) <sup>o</sup>

---

### Trackers Details

# Trackers Details

As you have certainly read, the Trackers feature is a powerful, flexible tool for recording information about a collection of items.

One of this power is the use and the definition of several "field types".

## Field types Overview

The following is a short list of Trackers field types and their uses (as far as i have understood them and as seen in 1.9):

Name	Type	SQL Type	Uses
text field t		VARCHAR 255	Alphanumeric

From Here

Useful Links

---

## Surveys

# Surveys

## Feature Overview

From Here

Useful Links

---

## Surveys User

# Surveys User

## Surveys Admin

# Surveys Admin

- [Surveys Admin](#)
  - [Surveys](#)
    - [Admin surveys](#)

- [Create New Survey](#)

## Surveys

To administer Surveys, go to Main Menu and click on the "**Surveys**" ,"Admin surveys" submenu.

### Admin surveys



Surveys

[Create New Survey](#)

---

## Surveys Details

---

## Newsletters

# Newsletters

### Feature Overview

A newsletter is an email sent to a group of users interested in some subject from time to time. Tiki has a newsletters section where you can setup and send newsletters and another section where you can subscribe.

From Here

Useful Links

---



## Newsletters User

# Newsletters User

## Listing newsletters

Clicking the newsletters link in the application menu lists the available newsletters. The user can subscribe to a newsletter by clicking it. If the user has the permission and the newsletter admits it the user can subscribe an email address different than the one he is using on the site, sometimes users with many email accounts want to deliver newsletters to a specific account instead of his main email account.

### *insert graphic*

Once subscribed the user will NOT receive the newsletter until he confirms his subscription. Tiki will send the user email a message asking him to click a link to enable the subscription. This prevents users or admins from spamming users by adding them to the newsletter.

## Subscribing and unsubscribing

The emails that tiki send to newsletter users to confirm a subscription, welcome a user or say bye bye are in the directory templates/mails, you can edit them as you want.

Once a subscription is confirmed the user will be able to unsubscribe by following a link that is automatically sent when a newsletter is sent to the user.

---

## Newsletters Admin

# Newsletters Admin

- [Newsletters Admin](#)
  - [Newsletters](#)
    - [Admin newsletters](#)
      - [Creating newsletters](#)
      - [Sending newsletters](#)

## Newsletters

To administer Newsletters, go to Main Menu and click on the **"Newsletters"** , "Admin newsletters" submenu.

### Admin newsletters



Newsletters

### Creating newsletters

You can create a newsletter from clicking the admin link in the newsletters section of the application menu.

### *insert graphic*

Creating a newsletter is very simple, then you should make your users aware of the existence of the newsletter to let them subscribe, you can use several tiki mechanisms like modules, banners, dynamic content sections or similar to communicate the existence of the newsletter to the users.

### Sending newsletters

As admin you can see the list of existing newsletters and the number of subscribers (confirmed between parenthesis). Whenever admin wants he can send a newsletter to the confirmed users:

### *insert graphic*

A newsletter is just an HTML page that will be send by email. You can see a history of previously sent newsletters in this screen and you can reuse an already sent newsletter to send a new edition of the newsletter.

Tiki will ask for confirmation before sending the newsletter indicating how many users will receive the newsletter and showing a preview of the newsletter.

You can define templates for newsletters using the content templates system and then selecting the template from the send newsletters screen.

The From name is defined by the field "Sender Email" in the admin panel.

---

## Newsletters Details

---

## Ephemerides

# Ephemerides

Ephemerides are content that varies by date.

## Feature Overview

From Here

Useful Links

---

## Ephemerides User

# Ephemerides User

---

## Ephemerides Admin

# Ephemerides Admin

- [Ephemerides Admin](#)
  - [Ephemerides](#)
    - [Ephemerides Admin](#)
      - [Calendar filter](#)
      - [\(Day\)](#)

## Ephemerides

To administer Ephemerides, go to Main Menu and click on the **"Ephemerides"** ,  
"Ephemerides Admin" submenu.

### Ephemerides Admin



Ephemerides

### Calendar filter

(Day)

---

## Ephemerides Details

---

### Charts

# Charts

### Feature Overview

From Here

- 

Useful Links

---

### Charts User

# Charts User

---

## Charts Admin

# Charts Admin

- Charts Admin
  - Charts
    - Charts Admin
      - Add or edit a chart

## Charts

To administer Charts, go to Main Menu and click on the **"Charts"** ,"Charts Admin" submenu.

## Charts Admin



Charts

[Add or edit a chart](#)

---

## Charts Details

# Charts Details

---

## Stats

# Stats

---

Stats User

# Stats User

---

Stats Admin

# Stats Admin

---

Stats Details

# Stats Details

---

Games

# Games

---

Games User

# Games User

---

Games Admin

# Games Admin

- [Games Admin](#)
  - [Games](#)
    - [Upload a game](#)

## Games



### Games

To administer Games, go to Main Menu and click on the "**Games**" menu.

### Upload a game

---

## Games Details

# Games Details

---

## Calendar

# Calendar

There are 2 calendars in Tikiwiki

- Mini calendar also called User calendar
- Group calendar

### Key Function and Sub-features

- Calendar tab provides view of appointments for a time period set by administrator
- Event tab allows for event scheduling

### Related Links

- [Calendar User](#)
  - [Calendar Admin](#)
  - [Calendar Details](#)
-

## Calendar User

# Using Calendars

The *calendar* is a feature-rich resource to help track site modifications as well as organize, and collaborate with individuals & groups around the world using the user-friendly architecture of TikiWiki. TikiWiki's **Calendar** feature makes use of practically all of the features you might find in other web calendars, while also fully integrating the other features of TikiWiki such as categories, wikis, blogs, galleries, and many others!

Depending on how the TikiWiki administrator has configured the TikiWiki site you're using, you may be able to do some or all of the following:

- View a list of all available calendars on your TikiWiki site
- View a calendar
- Create a calendar
- Add a new event to a calendar
- Edit or delete a calendar event
- Print a calendar

The following sections explain how to perform these actions.

- **Using Calendars**
  - **Navigating the Calendar**
    - **The navigation bar**
    - **The Mini-Navigation Calendar**
  - **Special Features**
    - **The Calendars Panel**
    - **The Events Panel (brief note)**
    - **The Hide tab**
  - **Zoom Levels/Views**
    - **Day**
    - **Week**
    - **Month**

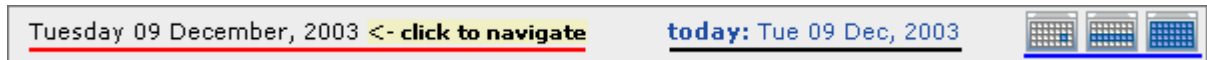
## Navigating the Calendar

### The navigation bar

- Viewing \_\_\_ date



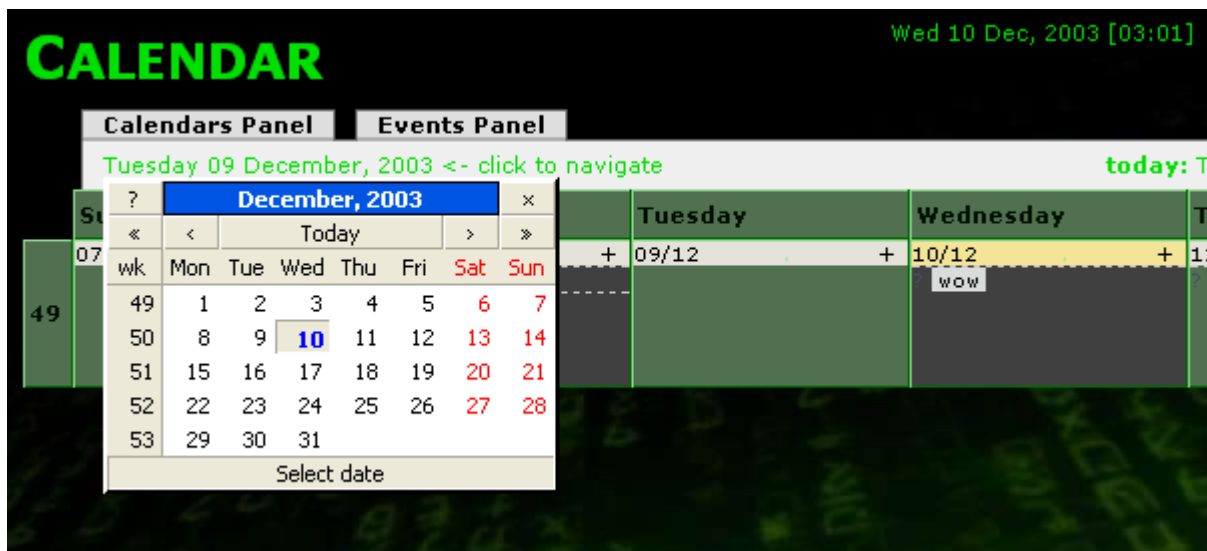
- Today's date (jump to today in calendar)
- Zoom Level/Views



Calendar Navigation Bar

### The Mini-Navigation Calendar

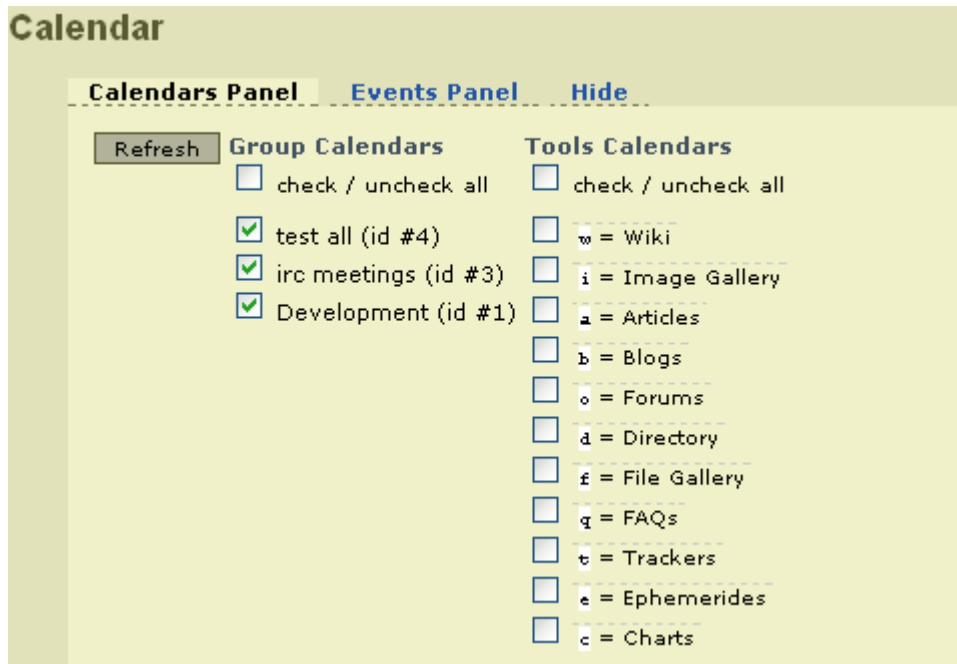
- ?
- x / clicking anywhere outside the mini-nav calendar
- << | >>
- < | >
- Today
- Week #
- Selecting the date you wish to view



Mini-Navigation Calendar

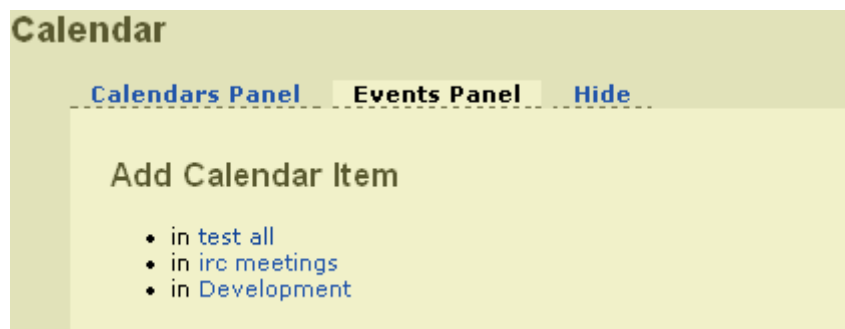
## Special Features

### The Calendars Panel



Calendars Panel

**The Events Panel (brief note)**



Events Panel

**The Hide tab**

**Zoom Levels/Views**

**Day**

- Time

- Events
  - Assigned tool calendar(s)
  - Exact time
  - Linked page name (if applicable)
  - Who made the modification

**Calendar**

[Calendars Panel](#) [Events Panel](#)

Monday 08 December, 2003 <- [click to navigate](#) **today:** Mon 08 Dec, 2003

Hours	Events
0h	
1h	
2h	
3h	
4h	
5h	
6h	
7h	
8h	
9h	
10h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o 10:17 : Re: User Registration Fails Every Time... <i>by chinjw</i></li><li>w 10:32 : UserPagemusus Updated <i>by musus</i></li><li>o 10:38 : Upgrade from 1.7.1.1 to 1.7.4 <i>by malhar</i></li><li>o 10:54 : Bizarre display in IE? <i>by joelg</i></li></ul>
11h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>w 11:46 : TikiTesters Updated <i>by Chealer9</i></li><li>Added me :)</li></ul>
12h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o 12:05 : Re: Upgrade from 1.7.1.1 to 1.7.4 <i>by Damian</i></li><li>o 12:08 : Re: Intranet - multiple lists of Article <i>by Damian</i></li><li>o 12:10 : Re: Bizarre display in IE? <i>by Damian</i></li></ul>
13h	
14h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o 14:12 : Re: Re: This News Group <i>by hengis</i></li><li>o 14:33 : login with LDAP <i>by Chengetai</i></li></ul>
15h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>t 15:37 : Tiki 1.8 CVS Bugs new item in tracker</li><li>o 15:54 : Re: Re: Bizarre display in IE? <i>by joelg</i></li></ul>
16h	
17h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o 17:20 : Conditional menus? Module syntax info? <i>by gstaniak</i></li></ul>
18h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>o 18:19 : Re: login with LDAP <i>by Damian</i></li><li>o 18:22 : Re: Conditional menus? Module syntax info? <i>by Damian</i></li><li>o 18:35 : Re: Re: Conditional menus? Module syntax info? <i>by gstaniak</i></li></ul>
19h	
20h	
21h	
22h	
23h	

Day View

Week

- Date format

- Week #
- Days of the week
- Events
  - Basic Information
    - Meaning/Definition
    - Assigned tool calendar(s)
    - Linked page name (if applicable)

**Calendar**

Calendars Panel    Events Panel

Monday 08 December, 2003 <- click to navigate    today: Mon 08 Dec

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday
49 07/12 . . +	08/12 . . +	09/12 . . +	10/12 . . +	11/12 . . +
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊞ TikiUsabili..</li> <li>⊞ CRM..</li> <li>⊞ CRM..</li> <li>⊞ CRM..</li> <li>⊞ CalendarDev..</li> <li>⊞ CalendarDev..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ JsCalendar..</li> <li>⊞ JsCalendar..</li> <li>⊞ JsCalendar..</li> <li>⊞ JsCalendar..</li> <li>⊞ JsCalendar..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ TikiPackage..</li> <li>⊞ Calendar..</li> <li>⊞ TikiPackage..</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊞ TikiTesters..</li> <li>⊞ TikiTesters..</li> <li>⊞ UserPageSqu..</li> <li>⊞ TikiTesters..</li> <li>⊞ UserPageSqu..</li> <li>⊞ UserPageSqu..</li> <li>⊞ TikiTesters..</li> <li>⊞ ReleaseProc..</li> <li>⊞ CvsBranch18..</li> <li>⊞ CvsEtiquett..</li> <li>⊞ BRANCH-1-8</li> <li>⊞ tw.o on..</li> <li>⊞ CvsBranch1</li> <li>⊞ CvsEtiquett..</li> <li>⊞ CvsEtiquett..</li> <li>⊞ UserPagexe</li> <li>⊞ UserPagexe</li> <li>⊞ UserPagexe</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊞ InstallTiki..</li> <li>⊞ InstallTiki..</li> <li>⊞ Intranet -..</li> <li>⊞ Repex..</li> <li>⊞ Re: User..</li> <li>⊞ UserPagemus..</li> <li>⊞ Upgrade..</li> <li>⊞ Bizarre..</li> <li>⊞ TikiTesters..</li> <li>⊞ Re:..</li> <li>⊞ Re:..</li> <li>⊞ Re:..</li> <li>⊞ Re: Re:..</li> <li>⊞ login with..</li> <li>⊞ Tiki 1.8..</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>? wow</li> <li>? wow</li> </ul>	

03:00 - 05:00  
in **Development**

**BRANCH-1-8**  
Redflo has conducted the branching of 1.8, with help of mose, for working on a frozen stable release candidate. The operation has been done in live context on irc.

... click to edit

Week View - Basic Information

- Detail Information
  - Meaning/Definition
  - Exact time
  - Assigned tool calendar(s)

- Event description
- Who made the modification

**Calendar**

Calendars Panel    Events Panel

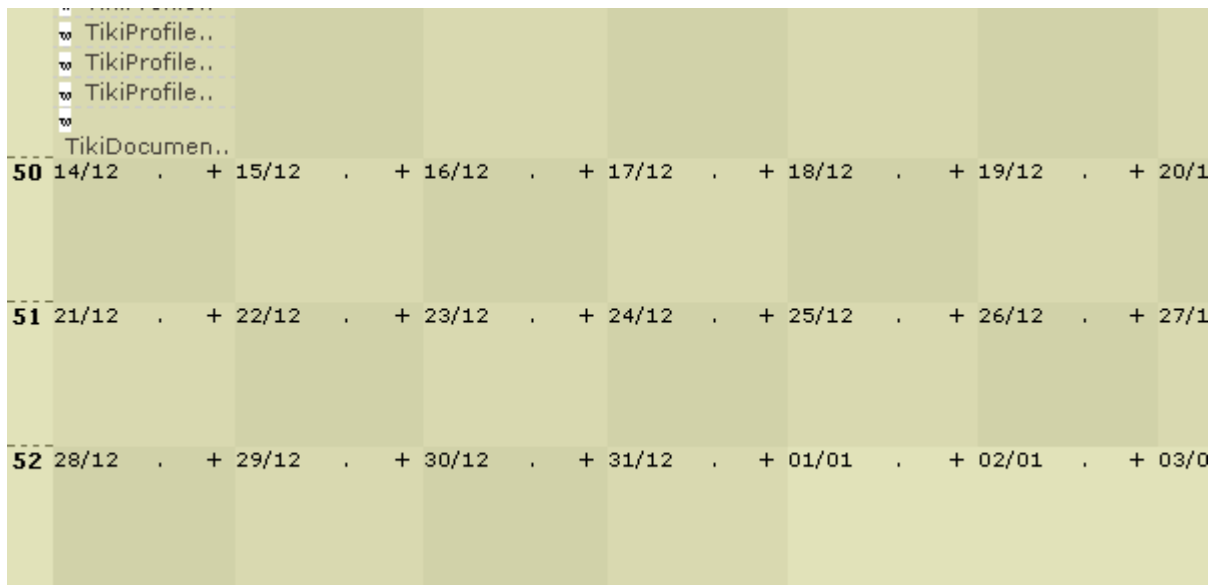
Monday 08 December, 2003 <- click to navigate    today: Mon 08 Dec, 2003

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
49 07/12	08/12	09/12	10/12	11/12	12/12	13/12
TikiUsabili..	TikiTesters..	InstallTiki..	? WOW	? WOW	? WOW	
CRM..	TikiTesters..	InstallTiki..				
CRM..		Intranet -..				
CRM..	UserPageSqu..	Repex..				
	TikiTesters..	Re: User..				
CalendarDev..						
	UserPageSqu..	UserPagemus..				
CalendarDev..		Upgrade..				
Calendar..	UserPageSqu..	Bizarre..				
Calendar..	TikiTesters..	TikiTesters..				
Calendar..		Re:..				
	ReleaseProc..	Re:..				
JsCalendar..	CvsBranch18..	Re:..				
JsCalendar..		Re: Re:..				
	CvsEtiquett..	login with..				
JsCalendar..	? BRANCH-1-8	Tiki 1.8..				
	w	Re: Re:..				
JsCalendar..	+ tw.o on..					
JsCalendar..	CvsBranch	04:00 - 05:00				
		in <b>Development</b>				
Calendar..	CvsEtique	tw.o on BRANCH-1-8				
Calendar..		mose upgraded tikiwiki.org				
Calendar..	CvsEtique	in stable BRANCH 1.8.				
		... click to edit				
TikiPackage..	UserPagexen..					
Calendar..						
	UserPagexen..					
TikiPackage..						

Week View - Detailed Information

**Month**

- Date format
- Week #
- Days of the week



The screenshot shows a calendar interface with a light green background. At the top left, there is a vertical list of menu items: 'TikiProfile..', 'TikiProfile..', 'TikiProfile..', and 'TikiDocumen..'. Below this, the calendar is displayed in a grid format. The first row is labeled '50' and contains dates from 14/12 to 20/12. The second row is labeled '51' and contains dates from 21/12 to 27/12. The third row is labeled '52' and contains dates from 28/12 to 03/01. Each date is followed by a small dot and a plus sign, suggesting a list of events or links for that day.

Month View

... to be continued ...

## Calendar Admin

# Calendar Admin

With administrative privileges, click Admin, then the Features icon. Under the Tiki Sections and Features heading, find and check the Tiki Calendar checkbox, then save your changes.

You now should see a Calendar item when you expand the Admin menu. Click on Calendar to go to Calendar Admin.

There are two sections (tables) to this screen:

## Admin Calendars

List Calendars Create/edit Calendars

### List of Calendars

Find

ID	name	loc	cat	lang	prio	action
1	Public	n	n	n	n	 

Page: 1/1

[1](#)

### Create/edit Calendars

Name:	<input type="text"/>
Description:	<input type="text"/>
Custom Locations:	<input type="text" value="no"/>
Custom Categories:	<input type="text" value="no"/>
Custom Languages:	<input type="text" value="no"/>
Custom Priorities:	<input type="text" value="no"/>
	<input type="button" value="Save"/>

- Personal calendar

The personal calendar is a calendar where an event is only visible by the user that creates it. Physically it is a big unique calendar in the database that contains all the events. An event is displayed only for his creator. A personal calendar has special

perms that needs to be represerved to work correctly. The admin can choice a name for a personal calendar. You can have more than one personal calendar.

---

## Calendar Details

# Calendar Details

---

## Workflow

# Workflow

## Introduction and concepts

Galaxia is an “activity based” workflow. Workflow processes are implemented as a set of activities that must be completed to achieve some result. In Galaxia activities are represented as PHP scripts. Galaxia provides 3 big modules called: “Process Manager”, “Process Controller” and “Workflow”.

## Definitions

### Process

A process is defined as a set of activities that must be done to achieve some goal. Business circuits are mapped to processes to automate them. Process activities are connected using transitions defining what has to be done after each activity is completed.

### Activity

An activity is something that has to be done as a part of a process. In Galaxia activities are mapped to PHP scripts so an activity can do anything that can be done from a PHP script.

### Role

Activities are associated to roles defining who can perform activities. Roles are defined at a per-process level.

### Instance

An instance is a process being executed. An instance is created when a process is started and the instance passes through the process activities until the process is terminated.



### Workitem

When an activity is completed a workitem is added to the instance. Workitems thus represent completed activities.

... see [Galaxia Concepts](#) ...

---

### Workflow User

# Workflow User

- [User Processes](#)
  - [User Activities](#)
  - [User Instances](#)
- 

### Workflow Admin

# Workflow Admin

---

### Workflow Details

# Workflow Details

---

### Integrator

# Integrator

---

### Integrator User

# Integrator User

---

## Integrator Admin

# Integrator Admin

---

## Integrator Details

# Integrator Details

---

## Categories

# Categories

- Classify content according to subject descriptors

### Key Function and sub-features



- Organize categories in a tree hierarchy with unlimited subcategories.
- Assign objects to one or many categories
- Administrators can apply a special theme
- Deep search into subcategories from the [category browser](#) <sup>o</sup>
- PluginCategory
- PluginCatpath

### Related Links

- [Categories User](#)
  - [Categories Admin](#)
  - [Categories Details](#)
- 


## Categories User

# Categories User

△ ▾ Menu  

- Home
- Chat
- Contact us
- Stats
- Categories**
- Games
- Calendar
- :: Workflow
- :: Wiki
- :: Image Galleries

## Categories

search category:  deep:  

**Current category: TOP**

**Objects (0)**

## Categories

search category:  deep:  

**Current category: TOP**

- Personal
  - Drumming
- Family
  - Cogley
    - Mori
- Fitness
- Friends
- Gadgets
- Hobbies
- Japan
- Lifestyle
- Professional
  - Company
  - Consulting
  - Ethics
  - Industry Organizations
  - Knowledge Management
  - Project Management



Add objects to category

Find  filter

page:	bio edu emp HomePage jrc	add
article:	Japan Trip	add
blog:	Rick	add
directory:		add
image gal:	Rick's Pix	add
file gal:	test	add
forum:	Test	add
poll:		add
faq:		add
tracker:	Movie Reviews	add
quiz:		add

## Categories Admin

# Categories Admin

:: Charts

:: Admin (click!)

Admin drawings

Admin dsn

Backups

Banners

Banning

Cache

Categories

Chat

Content <http://rm.co>

Cookies

## Admin categories

Current category: TOP

Personal



### Add new category

Parent:

























Name:

Description:

Save

## Admin categories

Current category: TOP

- [-] Personal  
- Drumming  
- [-] Family  
- Cogley  
- Mori  
- Fitness  
- Friends  
- Gadgets  
- Hobbies  
- Japan  
- Lifestyle  
- [+] Professional  

child categories: 6, objects in category: 0

### Add new category

Parent:

Name:

## Categories Details

# Categories Details

This draft is based on 1.10 20040829

- Categories Details
  - Permissions
  - Preferences
  - Modules
  - Files used
  - Database

## Permissions

Perm Name	Default Level	Description
tiki_p_admin_categories	editors	Can admin categories
tiki_p_view_categories	registered	Can browse categories

## Preferences

Pref name in tiki_preferences table	default value	comment
feature_categories		
feature_categoryobjects		Show Category Objects (displays the objects in the categories in which objects of some types are categorized)
feature_categorypath		Show Category Path (displays the categories in which objects of some types are categorized)

## Modules

module name	usage
last_category_objects	Displays the last objects categorized in the category with specified <i>id</i> , and of default <i>type</i> (default type is not anything, but Wiki page). The actually displayed objects (and their order) may be incorrect if some were progressively categorized in multiple categories.

## Files used

Main files	categorize.php
	templates/categorize.tpl
	categorize_list.php
	tiki-browse_categories.php
	templates/tiki-browse_categories.tpl
	tiki-categpermissions.php

	templates/tiki-categpermissions.tpl
Admin	tiki-admin_categories.php templates/tiki-admin-categories.tpl
Libs	lib/categories/categlib.php lib/tree/tree.php lib/tree/categ_admin_tree.php lib/tree/categ_browse_tree.php
Modules	modules/mod-last_category_objects.php templates/modules/mod-last_category_objects.tpl
Plugins	lib/wiki-plugins/wikiplugin_category.php

## Database

Table	Usage
tiki_categories	Categories and information about them (name description, parent, hits)
tiki_categorized_objects	Categorized objects (type, objId, description, created (date representing the last time the object was not categorized), date, href (URL to access the object), hits)
tiki_category_objects	Categories (categId) in which categorized objects are categorized. Used with tiki_categorized_objects with common field catObjectId

---

## Banners

# Banners

---

## Banners User

# Banners User

---

## Banners Admin

# Banners Admin

---

## Banners Details

# Banners Details

---



## Modules

# Modules

### TIKIWIKI MODULES

*Module*

*Short Description*

<a href="#">mod-articles?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-assistant?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-breadcrumb?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-categories?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-comm_received_objects?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-directory_last_sites?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-directory_stats?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-directory_top_sites?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-eph?</a>	daily text/images set in Ephemerides feature
<a href="#">mod-featured_links?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_best_voted_topics?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_last_posts?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_last_topics?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_most_commented_forums?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_most_read_topics?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-forums_most_visited_forums?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-google?</a>	Google search box
<a href="#">mod-last_articles?</a>	display latest articles
<a href="#">mod-last_blog_posts?</a>	display latest blog posts
<a href="#">mod-last_category_objects?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_created_blogs?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_created_faqs?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_created_quizzes?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_files?</a>	display latest items in file gallery
<a href="#">mod-last_file_galleries?</a>	display latest file galleries
<a href="#">mod-last_image_galleries?</a>	display latest image galleries
<a href="#">mod-last_modified_blogs?</a>	display blogs with latest modifications
<a href="#">mod-last_modif_pages?</a>	display most recently edited wiki pages
<a href="#">mod-last_modif_tracker_items?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_submissions?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-last_tracker_items?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-live_support?</a>	start live support feature
<a href="#">mod-logged_users?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-messages_unread_messages?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-num_submissions?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-old_articles?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-online_users?</a>	lists currently logged in users
<a href="#">mod-random_pages?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-shoutbox?</a>	post comments in to the module for all to see
<a href="#">mod-since_last_visit?</a>	changes in various features since last login
<a href="#">mod-switch_lang?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-switch_lang2?</a>	
<a href="#">mod-switch_theme?</a>	form to switch theme

[mod-tail?](#)  
[mod-top\\_active\\_blogs?](#)  
[mod-top\\_articles?](#)  
[mod-top\\_files?](#)  
[mod-top\\_file\\_galleries?](#)  
[mod-top\\_games?](#)  
[mod-top\\_images?](#)  
[mod-top\\_images\\_th?](#)  
[mod-top\\_image\\_galleries?](#)  
[mod-top\\_pages?](#)                      Wiki pages with most hits  
[mod-top\\_quizzes?](#)  
[mod-top\\_visited\\_blogs?](#)  
[mod-top\\_visited\\_faqs?](#)  
[mod-user\\_blogs?](#)  
[mod-user\\_bookmarks?](#)  
[mod-user\\_image\\_galleries?](#)  
[mod-user\\_pages?](#)  
[mod-user\\_tasks?](#)  
[mod-whats\\_related?](#)  
[mod-who\\_is\\_there?](#)  
[mod-wiki\\_last\\_comments?](#)  
most recently added wiki comments

---

## Modules User

# Modules User

In tikiwiki a module is just a "box" that appears on either the left or right margin of the page. (doc.tikiwiki.org has several on both sides, like *Want to Write* at the top left.) Inside the box is whatever you want to put there - menus?, search fields, chat features, recent changes etc.

Admins can create modules, change in what order or what column they appear, assign permissions to modules - for example there may be modules that registered users can see but anonymous users cannot, and modules that appear for only certain groups of users.

for more about how to customize modules, see [Modules Admin](#).

---

## Modules Admin

# Modules Admin

This part of documentation is incomplete

Changes to modules are accessed under the Admin Modules menu (tiki-admin\_modules.php).

In Admin Modules page you can assign and edit the order and permissions of custom User Modules and default modules.

To remove an assigned module, click its **x** on its row under **Assigned Modules** menu at the bottom.

User modules are custom modules that can include HTML and Smarty code, there is a excellent set of Smarty documentation at <http://smarty.php.net>.

To escape smary code you can use `{literal}{/literal}`

Once a user module is created, it ca be selected and assigned from the Module Name list, just like the standard modules available to the site.

In the meantime please see [UserModuleAdmin](#), [Modules User](#) and [UserModuleDoc](#).

Use 'Create New User Module' to create custom modules



^^ needs to be moved to doc.tw.o: picture not found img/wiki\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/admin\_module.png

## Tiki 1.9 parameters

### *lang*

You can display a module only for some languages. In the parameter field, (sorry, where is that?) you may enter `lang=fr` that means the module will be displayed only if the current langage is French. You may enter `lang[]=en&lang[]=fr` that will display the module only if the current language is French or English. You can have a list of language strings in [TikiWikiInternationalizationAndLanguages?](#)

### *flip*

You can make a module *shadeable* - to toggle the module contents, so that only the titlebar is displayed - by entering `flip=y` in the parameter field. This causes the module to display a button on the title bar that will toggle module contents on and off. The module defaluts to unshaded (contents shown) and the state is stored in

the users' session cookie. See also the [Users Shade Modules](#) feature.

### **decorations**

You can suppress module decorations - the titlebar and box that displays the content - for a module by entering `decorations=n` in the parameter field. This is unlikely to be useful for most admins (it is provided to enable module content to be embedded in other CMS sections).

Note: If you need multiple parameters, the syntax is `max=20&lang=fr` (see the php function `parse_str`)

---

### Modules Details

## Modules Details

---

### Chat

## Chat

---

### Chat User

## Chat User

---

### Chat Admin

## Chat Admin

---

### Chat Details

## Chat Details

---

### Live Support

# Live Support

---

### Live Support User

# Live Support User

---

### Live Support Admin

# Live Support Admin

---

### Live Support Details

# Live Support Details

---

### Maps

# Feature Overview

By enabling the Maps feature, you can display interactive maps of any area in the world in any projection. You can zoom on a map, select which geographic layer you want to see and query any geographical object.

Tiki combined with this feature becomes a **Geospatial Content Management System (GeoCMS)**. Other features are taking advantage of maps: user preferences, image galleries,...

The system is based on the **Mapserver software from the University of Minnesota**<sup>en</sup>. Tiki provides a nice, easy and integrated interface to the Mapserver.

Applications are unlimited:

- help to decision making by providing relevant geographical information
- geology mapping
- environmental mapping

- location mapping
- creating interactive geographical manuals
- ...

This system can be part of an e-government initiative.

However, enabling this feature is not trivial (yet) as it requires installing correctly the Mapserver Software with its php mapscript extension.

The system is composed of a Map viewer, a Layer Management tool and a Mapfiles manager.

In short to create a map:

- you upload your GIS files using the [\*\*Maps Layer Management\*\*](#).
- you create and edit a Mapfile using the [\*\*Maps Mapfiles Manager\*\*](#)
- you display the map inside the Map viewer

## Table of Contents

- [\*\*Maps User\*\*](#): How to operate the maps viewer
- [\*\*Maps Editor\*\*](#): How to create maps
  - [\*\*Maps Layer Management\*\*](#)
  - [\*\*Maps Mapfiles Manager\*\*](#)
  - [\*\*Maps Details\*\*](#): Tips, tutorials and troubleshooting
    - [\*\*Maps Mapfile Tutorial\*\*](#): A tutorial on mapfile editing
    - [\*\*Maps MapView\*\*](#): Creating specific views for a map
- [\*\*Maps Admin\*\*](#): To install and administer the system.
  - [\*\*Maps Install\*\*](#): Installing the php mapscript extension
  - [\*\*Maps Config\*\*](#): Configuring parameters in the admin interface

It is advised to read the [\*\*MapServer\*\*](#) <sup>☐</sup> Documentation on how to install and operate the software. Some specific information to enable Mapserver inside Tiki is in [\*\*Maps Admin\*\*](#).

## Useful Links

[\*\*MapServer Home Page\*\*](#) <sup>☐</sup>

[\*\*DM Press Release about MS 4\*\*](#) <sup>☐</sup>

[\*\*Reducing Vulnerabilities Via a Web Map Server\*\*](#) <sup>☐</sup>

TikiMap Out There:

- <http://www.sopac.org/maps> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://www.lands.gov.to/tiki/> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.mrd.gov.fj> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.gov.ki> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.vanuatu.gov.vu> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.mineral.gov.pg> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.meteorology.gov.ws> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://map.tuvalu.tv> <sup>o</sup>
  - <http://mapgis.ciat.cgiar.org/valle/> <sup>o</sup>
- 

## Maps User

- [The Interface](#)
- [Working with Maps](#)
  - [Zooming and Panning](#)
  - [Querying a geographical object](#)
  - [Changing the Image size of the map.](#)
  - [Selecting Views from dropdown list](#)
  - [Selecting the layers on the map](#)

# The Interface

**Pacific Map**

The interface displays a main map of the Pacific region with various layers overlaid. Below the map is a scale bar from 0 to 11500 km and a coordinate display showing x=167, y=-9.299999999999997. A toolbar contains navigation icons, a pan dropdown menu set to 'pan', and a zoom level dropdown set to '400'. A 'Redraw' button is also present. Below the toolbar, there are links for 'Reset Map', 'Click on the map or click redraw Help Comments', and a timestamp: 'Last modification date: Friday 17 of June, 2005 [07:24:49] by admin (127.0.0.1)-Hits:156(93)'.

**Overview**

**Legend**

- 12 miles zone
- EEZ

**Layer Manager**

Layer	On	🔍	🗑️	📄
Topography	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EEZ	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12 miles zone	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Land Mass	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bathymetry	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Fractures	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Plates	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cyclones	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tsunami Event	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tsunami Runup	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Volcano	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Country Names	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Islands Names	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Populated Places	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
User	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
image	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Grid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The interface is composed of several elements:

- The Map Title
- The Map
- The Overview
- The Legend
- The Layer Manager
- The Cursor Coordinates
- The Scalebar
- The Control Buttons



- The Map Info

# Working with Maps

## Zooming and Panning

First you have to select from the drop down box the level of zoom or pan you which to use. You then click on the map to define the point that will appear centered after the zoom/pan. Do not drag the map or try to draw a rectangle on the map

## Querying a geographical object

Select the query tool next to the pan and zooming tools and click on the map on a geographical object. The object(s) will be highlighted and a table of objects with their attribute data will be displayed below the map.

## Changing the Image size of the map.

The default map size is 400 pixels width, you can change the size to various pixels size, then click on redraw **with pan being selected**.

## Selecting Views from dropdown list

A set of preselected locations may be available via a dropdown list. Select a location name from the dropdown list then click on the Go button. This action will display the selected location in the redrawn map.

## Selecting the layers on the map

The Maps Layer Manager is here to help you select the layers you want to display on your map. Use the [-] and [+] to fold or unfold the Layer Manager. Check the boxes of each feature you want to display. Beware some layers may hide others. The layers are organised from top to bottom on their drawing order. Therefore the bottom layer is the last one to be drawn, so it will appear on top on the map. You can also select to display labels when the layer supports it. If there is a link on the layer name then you can learn more about this layer. Some layers are queryable and will be indicated as such. Finally, if you are a registered user you may download in native format the public layers.

---

## Maps Editor

---

## Maps Layer Management

---

## Maps Mapfiles Manager

---

## Maps Details

# Maps Details

Here are a series of tutorials and tips to be used when utilising the **Maps** feature.

- **Maps Mapfile Tutorial** : Creating mapfiles
  - **Maps MapView** : Creating views inside the mapfile
- 

## Maps Mapfile Tutorial

### Table of Contents

- **Mapfile structure**
  - **Comments**
  - **Objects or Groups**
  - **A word on colors**
- **Mapfile header**
  - **Map object**
  - **Web**
    - **Metadata**
      - **VIEW**
  - **Reference**
  - **Legend**
  - **Scalebar**
  - **Query**
- **Layers**
  - **Vector layer**
    - **Layer Type**
      - **Shapefile**
      - **Mapinfo TAB**
    - **Query**
    - **Labels**
    - **Thematic Mapping**
    - **Metadata**

- [WIKI](#)
- [DOWNLOAD](#)
- [Raster layer](#)
  - [Geotiff](#)
  - [Image Tiles](#)
- [Grid Layer](#)

# Mapfile structure

## Comments

Any text after a # is a comment. Use comments a lot to document your mapfile.

## Objects or Groups

A mapfile is composed of several objects. Each object start by the keyword object and finishes by END. Inside an object there can be several objects with the object starting by its keyword and finishing by END.

A mapfile starts by the keyword MAP and finishes by END

```
MAP
... some lines...
END # end of map
```

Inside the mapfile there are objects like layers, each layer start by the keyword LAYER and finishes by END

```
MAP
...
  LAYER
  ...
  END # end of layer

  LAYER
  ...
  END # end of layer
END # end of map
```

Do not try to figure how many END you need to put in the mapfile but use indentation to clearly identify each object with its keyword, text and END keyword. All objects are nested and with proper indentation, they are clearly visible. Indentation is not required but facilitates understanding a mapfile. Adequate comments help a lot too.

## A word on colors

The keyword `COLOR`, `OUTLINECOLOR`,.. specify the color in the RGB color space. The first value is the red intensity from 0 (no red) to 255, the second value is the green intensity from 0 (no green) to 255 and the last value is the blue intensity from 0 (no blue) to 255. A `COLOR 0 0 0` indicates black while `COLOR 255 255 255` indicates white. `COLOR 0 255 0` would be pure green. The 3 values are compulsory and must be numbers. To select some correct values, use a color selector like the one inside MS-Paint in accessories. You select the color and the RGB values are indicated.

# Mapfile header

The mapfile header is composed of several objects for the representation of the maps on the screen, you have the map itself, the web object to define how the web image is created, the reference or overview, the scalebar, the legend and if the map should be queryable. It is better to use pre-canned header and modify little parameters to conform to a specific map.

This is the standard header for a map object

```
#
# Start of map file
#
MAP
NAME "Efate"
STATUS ON
SIZE 400 400
EXTENT 196900 8027100 245000 8073000
UNITS METERS
TRANSPARENT OFF
SHAPEPATH "/var/www/html/map/"
IMAGETYPE png24
FONTSET "fonts/fontset.txt"

OUTPUTFORMAT
  NAME png24
  DRIVER "GD/PNG"
  MIMETYPE "image/png"
  IMAGEMODE RGB
  EXTENSION "png"
END

#
# Start of web interface definition
#
WEB
  TEMPLATE /var/www/html/map/map.html
  IMAGEPATH /var/www/html/map/images/
  IMAGEURL /map/images/
  LOG /var/www/html/map/maplog
END
```

```
#
# Start of reference map
#
REFERENCE
  IMAGE /var/www/html/map/data/efate.png
  EXTENT 196900 8027100 245000 8073000
  STATUS ON
  COLOR -1 -1 -1
  OUTLINECOLOR 255 0 0
  SIZE 95 95
END

#
# Start of legend
#
LEGEND
  KEYSIZE 18 12
  LABEL
    TYPE BITMAP
    SIZE MEDIUM
    COLOR 0 0 89
  END
  STATUS ON
END

#
# Start of scalebar
#
SCALEBAR
  IMAGECOLOR 255 255 255
  LABEL
    COLOR 0 0 0
    SIZE SMALL
  END
  SIZE 350 5
  COLOR 255 255 255
  BACKGROUNDCOLOR 0 0 0
  OUTLINECOLOR 0 0 0
  UNITS kilometers
  INTERVALS 5
  STATUS ON
END

#
# Start of query definitions
#
QUERYMAP
  STATUS ON
  STYLE HILITE
END
```

**Tip: A quick way to start a mapfile is to take the above and just add a END at the end of it. Point to a real image in the REFERENCE section and change all the paths to reflect your own installation. You will have then a working mapfile with no layers. You can then add a GRID to it and start to**

## **make modification to suit what you really want to achieve.**

It is important here to have the following paths set correctly in regards to where you installed the mapfiles:

- SHAPEPATH
- IMAGEPATH
- IMAGEURL
- IMAGE

See their definition later in the text

### **Map object**

```
MAP
NAME "Efate"
#name of the map file
STATUS ON
# is this map on by default
SIZE 400 400
# size in pixel of the image map
EXTENT 196900 8027100 245000 8073000
# geographic extents of the map
UNITS METERS
# units for the geographic extents
TRANSPARENT OFF
# the background is not transparent
SHAPEPATH "/var/www/html/map/"
# where the shapefiles are stored on the
# server also used for directory reference
IMAGETYPE png24
# type of image output, here PNG format in 24bits color
FONTSET "fonts/fontset.txt"
# file containing the locations of fonts
```

### **Web**

This group defines where to store information on the server and how to provide it to the web browser

```
WEB
  TEMPLATE /var/www/html/map/map.html
# location of the template for results
# the line needs to be here, but it is
# not used (no file at this location)
  IMAGEPATH /var/www/html/map/images/
# location where to store maps images
  IMAGEURL /map/images/
# web path for the maps images
  LOG /var/www/html/map/maplog
# location of the logfile
```

END

## Metadata

### VIEW

View allows you to create views so you can quickly move to the geographic location, for instance moving from one country to another one.

### WEB

#### METADATA

```
VIEW1 "American Samoa,181.496593149,-20.0990853659,199.331777248,-8.22408536586"
```

```
VIEW2 "Australia,97.5030380511,-48.984521576,168.843774449,-1.48452157598"
```

```
VIEW3 "Cook Islands,180.098325105,-27.4401969982,215.768693304,-3.69019699813"
```

```
...
```

```
END
```

```
...
```

```
END
```

Each view needs to be numbered in sequential order. Each field is separated by commas, the first field is the name of the view, the following fields are minx,miny,maxx,maxy of the view.

Cf. [Maps MapView](#) for a detailed description.

## Reference

This group defines how the overview should be displayed. You use an image representing the area of interest and you specify the coordinates of the location of the edge of the image. The system will draw on the image a rectangle based on the current view, indicatin the boundaries of such view.

### REFERENCE

```
IMAGE /var/www/html/map/data/efate.png
```

```
# location of the image
```

```
EXTENT 196900 8027100 245000 8073000
```

```
# extent of the image
```

```
STATUS ON
```

```
# the overview is on by default
```

```
COLOR -1 -1 -1
```

```
# transparent background
```

```
OUTLINECOLOR 255 0 0
```

```
# the color of the outline
```

```
SIZE 95 95
```

```
# the size of the image in pixels
```

```
END
```

The tip to create an image for overview, is to not worry about the image at the beginning. Any image will do. When the layers are implemented in the mapfile and the main view sounds pretty enough, then select a default view, click *Redraw* if necessary to get the minx, maxx, miny, maxy parameters in the URL, (if necessary adjust them manually). Save the current map as an image onto your local machine, use an image editing software to resize the image to the size you want to use in the overview (here 95x95 pixel). Upload the image using the *maps->layer manager* and update the IMAGE link in the REFERENCE group to point to this new image. Finish by entering the correct EXTENTS that corresponds to the minx,miny,maxx,maxy of the map you used to create the overview.

## Legend

The legend is linked to each LAYER by the way each object type is represented (POINT, LINE, POLYGON,...) and its COLOR and OUTLINECOLOR and by the NAME used in the CLASS group. It is important to have a meaningful NAME for each CLASS group in every LAYER group. The NAME of the CLASS can be different from the NAME of the layer as a LAYER can have several CLASSES.

```
LEGEND
  KEYSIZE 18 12
# the size of the object representing the
# geographical object
  LABEL
  TYPE BITMAP
# Font type for the legend name of each
# geographical object
  SIZE MEDIUM
# font size
  COLOR 0 0 89
# font color
  END
  STATUS ON
# legend is on by default
END
```

## Scalebar

It is interesting to display a scalebar to get information on distances.

```
SCALEBAR
  IMAGECOLOR 255 255 255
# background color of the image placeholder

  LABEL
  COLOR 0 0 0
# color of the labels indicating the distance
  SIZE SMALL
# size of the labels
```



```
END
SIZE 350 5
# size in pixels of the scalebar
COLOR 255 255 255
# color used in the scalebar
BACKGROUNDCOLOR 0 0 0
# background color of the drawn scalebar
OUTLINECOLOR 0 0 0
# outline color of the scalebar
UNITS kilometers
# units to be used
INTERVALS 5
# How many intervals in total in the
# scalebar
STATUS ON
# the scalebar is on by default
END
```

## Query

This group specifies that the map will be queryable and how the selected objects should be represented. Include this group even if you don't have a LAYER that can be queryable. It will certainly come later.

```
QUERYMAP
STATUS ON
# the map is queryable by default
STYLE HILITE
# the selected object is highlighted
END
```

# Layers

## Vector layer

Let's start by a very simple layer that we will add more features to it. A layer starts by the keyword LAYER and finishes by END. It can include CLASS groups, METADATA groups. For a vector layer the CLASS is compulsory.

### Layer Type

The two main types of GIS vector are ESRI shapefiles or Mapinfo TAB files. ESRI shapefiles are natively supported while the Mapinfo files are supported via the OGR library.

All locations of files must be indicated in relative reference to the path indicated by the keyword SHAPEPATH in the MAP group.

If you have a file in "/var/www/html/map/data/mylayer.shp" and SHAPEPATH indicates "/var/www/html/map/" then your file location must be "data/mylayer.shp".

Using this convention allows you to easily locate files when you upload them using *Maps->Layer Management*.

File names are case sensitives and spaces in file names must be absoutely avoided. The extensions used for files in layer must stay with the same case sensitivity. A shapefile is usually made of a shp, idx, dbf files while a Mapinfo layer is made of TAB, ID, MAP, DAT (and sometimes IND) files.

#### Shapefile

```
LAYER
  NAME "My Layer"
  TYPE LINE
  STATUS ON
  DATA "data/myshapefile.shp"
  CLASS
    COLOR 255 0 0
    NAME "My layer legend"
  END # end of class
END # end of layer
```

In this example we see that the file is located in "data/", it is made of LINE objects that will be displayed with the COLOR red. The layer should be drawn on the map by default (STATUS ON), and it will be indicate as "My Layer" in the layer manager on the map, while being indicated as "My layer legend" in the LEGEND.

#### Mapinfo TAB

The difference with a shapefile is the use of the OGR library to read the Mapinfo files. The keyword CONNECTIONTYPE OGR must be used and the location of the file is given by the keyword CONNECTION instead of DATA. All the rest stay the same.

```
LAYER
  NAME "My Layer"
  TYPE LINE
  STATUS ON
  CONNECTIONTYPE OGR
  CONNECTION "data/mymapinfofile.TAB"
  CLASS
    COLOR 255 0 0
    NAME "My layer legend"
  END # end of class
END # end of layer
```

#### Query

To make the layer queryable add anywehere inside the LAYER object the following lines:

```
TEMPLATE "query.html"
TOLERANCE 3
```

## TOLERANCEUNITS PIXELS

The first parameters is necessary but does not need to point to a real file. It is only used outside tikimaps. The second parameters specify the pointing TOLERANCE in TOLERANCEUNITS, here 3 pixels. If you click on the map all the objects from this layer which are at less than 3 pixels from the click on the image will be selected. The map is then redraw and at the bottom of the page will be the information related from the object.

Note: if you create a GIS layer which fields contain HTML tags, like for IMG or A (anchor/link), they will be rendered accordingly. This allows you to create a layer pointing to images stored on Tiki.

### Labels

You can use querying to know which fields a GIS layer contains. From these fields you can select on to be used as object labels in the map. For instance you have a GIS layer which contains country names. The name of the country is in the field "NAME". You will use LABELITEM "NAME" to tell the mapserver which field to use for labels. Inside the CLASS object, you would specify how you want the labels to be rendered. For instance in our example the layer would look like this:

```
LAYER
  NAME "Country Names"
  TYPE POINT
  STATUS ON
  METADATA
    DOWNLOAD "T"
  END
  LABELITEM "NAME"
  LABELCACHE ON
  CONNECTIONTYPE OGR
  CONNECTION "data/Country.TAB"
  CLASS
    SYMBOL 0
    COLOR 0 0 0
    NAME "Country Names"
    LABEL
      COLOR 0 0 0
      FONT arial
      TYPE TRUETYPE
      POSITION CC
      PARTIALS TRUE
      SIZE 7
      BUFFER 1
      OUTLINECOLOR 255 255 255
    END
  END
END
```

In this example LABEL is black (COLOR 0 0 0) using the arial FONT which is a TRUETYPE font. The POSITION of the label is Center/Center in regard to the POINT object. If an object is not fully on the map, the LABEL is still drawn (PARTIAL TRUE).

The SIZE of the label is 7 points. There are no labels closer than 1 pixels from each others (BUFFER 1). For this last parameter to work, you need to enable the LABELCACHE. Finally the label is surrounded by a white outline (OUTLINECOLOR 255 255 255).

### Thematic Mapping

Each layer contains one or more CLASS. The CLASS defines how each object should be drawn on the screen. By using CLASSITEM, you can use one field to separate objects in classes. For instance all the bathymetric lines which depth is between -100m and -500m belong to one class while each bathymetric lines which depth is between -500m and -1000m belong to another class. The separation into CLASS is made using an EXPRESSION in each CLASS. The EXPRESSION uses simple logic based on the field in CLASSITEM.

For instance in the example below we use the field "value" which contains the water depth of the LINE object to display this line object in various colors depending of the depth. If the EXPRESSION is true then the parameters in the CLASS apply. A CLASS without an EXPRESSION is a default CLASS for all the objects which have not been classified otherwise.

```
LAYER
  NAME "Bathymetry 20m"
  TYPE LINE
  STATUS OFF
  METADATA
    WIKI "FijiBathymetry"
  END
  TEMPLATE "query.html"
  TOLERANCE 3
  TOLERANCEUNITS PIXELS
  LABELITEM "Value"
  CLASSITEM "Value"
  LABELCACHE ON
  CONNECTIONTYPE OGR
  CONNECTION "data/fiji/viti_bathy_contour.TAB"
  CLASS
    SYMBOL 0
    COLOR 0 200 255
    NAME "Bathymetry 2.5m >-50m"
    EXPRESSION ([Value]>-50)
    LABEL
      ANGLE AUTO
      COLOR 0 0 0
      FONT arial
      TYPE TRUETYPE
      POSITION cc
      PARTIALS FALSE
      BUFFER 5
      SIZE 6
      OUTLINECOLOR 200 200 200
    END
  END
  CLASS
    SYMBOL 0
```

```
COLOR 0 100 255
NAME "Bathymetry 20m >-500m"
EXPRESSION ([Value]<-50 AND [Value]>=-500)
LABEL
  ANGLE AUTO
  FONT arial
  COLOR 0 0 0
  TYPE TRUETYPE
  POSITION cc
  PARTIALS FALSE
  BUFFER 5
  SIZE 6
  OUTLINECOLOR 200 200 200
END
END
END
```

### Metadata

Inside a LAYER group you can have a METADATA group. Some of this metadata is used for special purposes inside tikiwiki. There is only one METADATA group inside a LAYER group.

### WIKI

Using WIKI creates a link from the layer name to a wiki page. Use the wiki page to indicate some information on the layer:

- custodian
- ownership
- date of creation
- accuracy
- history
- datum/projection
- interesting layer features
- ...

```
METADATA
  WIKI "MyLayerPage"
END
```

### DOWNLOAD

If DOWNLOAD is set to "T" then the files that forms the layer can be downloaded by a registered user.

```
METADATA
  DOWNLOAD "T"
END
```

The system selects all the files with the same base name as defined in the LAYER DATA or CONNECTION clause but with different extension. However if one of these files has the extension NDL, the download is disabled. This allows to upload GIS data that can only be viewable.

### Raster layer

The easiest way to handle raster layers is to use Geotiff images which contain projection information. However making geotiff images may need advanced remote sensing software. The other way is to use an additional file which contains information about the coordinates of the pixels in the image file.

When several images are used instead of using a layer for each image they can be tiled. A shapefile is created with a rectangel for each image which helps the system to find the right image for the right location.

### Geotiff

Using a geotiff image in a layer is simple, the TYPE RASTER is used with DATA pointing to the tiff file. the keyword OFFSITE is used to define which color in the tiff image should be used for transparency. This is useful when tiling or overlapping several images.

```
LAYER
  NAME "DTM 50m"
  TYPE RASTER
  STATUS OFF
  DATA "data/fiji/VLevudtm.tif"
  OFFSITE 0 0 0
END
```

### Image Tiles

Images tiles are created using utility tools from the mapserver software. The utility is called gdaltindex and parses mainly geotiff images to get their boundaries and create a shapefile containing an outline for each of the images. Under Maps->Layer Management, at the bottom of the page a utility is available to generate the shapefile. Basically upload the images to the right directory. The images should have the same name prefix. Then reference all these images with a wildcaard and name the shapefile to be created. For instance you can upload coralcoastsigatoka.tif, coralcoastmomi.tif, coralcoastnavua.tif and reference them as coralcoast\*.tif and create the shapefile img\_index.shp

```
LAYER
  NAME "Coral Coast 4m IKONOS"
  TYPE RASTER
  METADATA
    WIKI "FijiImagery"
  END
```

```
STATUS ON
TILEINDEX "data/fiji/img_index.shp"
TILEITEM "Location"
OFFSITE 0 0 0
END
```

## Grid Layer

A grid layer allows you to draw a grid in the local coordinates on your map. It is useful to find location of objects on the map. For best effect the grid must be the last layer in the mapfile to be drawn the last.

```
LAYER
  NAME "Grid"
  TYPE LINE
  STATUS OFF
  CLASS
    COLOR 0 0 0
    LABEL
      FONT arial      # must be in your FONTSET
      TYPE TRUETYPE
      SIZE 8
      COLOR 0 0 0
      OUTLINECOLOR 255 255 255
    END
  END
  GRID
    MINARCS 2
    MAXARCS 6
  END
END
```

---

## Maps MapView

Table of Contents

- [Working with Views](#)
  - [Creating Views](#)
    - [Specifying the View](#)
    - [Set View Extents](#)
  - [Adding in the Views](#)

# Working with Views

Please read the documentation of [the Mapserver](#) and read the [Maps Mapfile](#)

**Tutorial** if you need to learn the basics of a Mapfile.

## Creating Views

### Specifying the View

The VIEW must be used as VIEW1,VIEW2,VIEW(n)...VIEW30. Followed by a location id/location name and the extents in double quotes.

```
VIEW1 "location id, "  
VIEW2 "location id, "  
VIEW3 "location id, "  
...  
...  
VIEW30 "location id, "
```

### Set View Extents

Get the map extents for the view you want to display and set the minx, miny, maxx, maxy values inside the double quotes " " separated by comma ','.

```
VIEW1 "location id,minx,miny,maxx,maxy"
```

## Adding in the Views

A Mapfile contains a WEB object. Inside the WEB object the METADATA keyword can be used to store your views and close it with an END. You can have up to a maximum of 30 views.

```
#  
# Start of web interface definition  
#  
WEB  
...  
....  
.....  
METADATA  
  VIEW1 "location id,minx,miny,maxx,maxy"  
  VIEW2 "location id,minx,miny,maxx,maxy"  
  VIEW3 "location id,minx,miny,maxx,maxy"  
  ....  
  ...  
  VIEW30 "location id,minx,miny,maxx,maxy"  
END  
....  
...  
  
END
```



## Maps Admin

# Administration

## Installation

Read first [Maps Install](#) and then proceed to configuration.

## Configuration

[Maps Config](#) configure the maps feature.

See also the [Maps Mapfile Tutorial](#) to understand mapfiles and how to create them.

---

## Maps Install

# Pre-requisites

You need [Mapserver v4.6](#) [php\\_mapscript.so](#) and have your .map files in /var/www/html/map/. This is configurable from the admin panel: [Maps Config](#), but first ensure that you have enabled the maps feature in Admin.

[Mapserver v4.6](#) [mapscript](#) is now capable to work as an extension to the php apache module

The default map file is pacific.map, it will be loaded if you do not specify anything when clicking on tiki-map.phtml. This is also configurable from the Admin/Features menu.

# Compilation of mapscript

I use the following to compile mapserver.so, but now you may find ready made packages for various distributions:

```
./configure --with-proj --with-gdal --with-ogr --with-wms --with-php=/usr/include/php
--without-tiff --with-threads
make
```

# Installation of mapscript

I then copy the file `mapscrip/php3/php_mapscript.so` into the php extension directory, usually `/usr/lib/php/extensions`. I then need to get php to load automatically this extension. I create an ini file for that.

```
/etc/php/40_mapscript.ini
```

```
#Loads the MapScript extension  
extension = php_mapscript.so
```

To test if the extension is correctly loaded with all library dependencies, install php as command line interface and run:

```
php -m
```

You should see the module MapScript loaded correctly. If a library is missing then you will have to install it too. Check the error messages generated at the beginning by `php -m`. Most common libraries to install `grass`, `proj`, `gdal`,...

Check in your Apache configuration that phtml files like php files are handled by the Apache php module.

# Creation of directories and installation of sample data

I now downlaod the tikiwiki-mapdata package, that you can find in the file section of the tikiwiki project on sourceforge, and I install the contents into the directory `/var/www/html/map`. It contains a `world.map` file and the data that goes with it in the `data/world` directory.

Your files that compose the layers must be in the data subdirectory of where are your map files. ie `/var/www/html/map/data`. They are then manageable with the Layer Manager inside Tiki. You can create subdirectories and upload your geographic files using the Tiki interface.

You need to create a directory `/var/www/html/map/images`. The mapscript will save the generated maps/images into this directory and Apache will serve them to the browser.

Now ensure that everything under the directory `/var/www/html/map` is owned by `apache.apache`, the user and group that runs Apache.

```
chown -R apache.apache /var/www/html/map
```

You should have this directory structure:

```
/var/www/html/map  
/var/www/html/map/world.map  
/var/www/html/map/images/  
/var/www/html/map/data/  
/var/www/html/map/data/world/  
/var/www/html/map/data/world/* (layers)
```

This directory structure is unsafe, I use the following conf file for Apache to ensure that the maps and data directory are protected against direct download of data. Some of the data you upload should be only visible as rendered as a map.

```
/etc/httpd/conf.d/41_mapserver.conf
```

```
#protect mapserver against downloads  
<Directory /var/www/html/map>  
    AllowOverride All  
    Options -Indexes FollowSymLinks MultiViews ExecCGI  
    <IfModule mod_access.c>  
        Order allow,deny  
        Deny from all  
    </IfModule>  
</Directory>  
<Directory /var/www/html/map/images>  
    AllowOverride All  
    Options -Indexes FollowSymLinks MultiViews ExecCGI  
    <IfModule mod_access.c>  
        Order allow,deny  
        Allow from all  
    </IfModule>  
</Directory>  
<Directory /var/www/html/map/graphics>  
    AllowOverride All  
    Options -Indexes FollowSymLinks MultiViews ExecCGI  
    <IfModule mod_access.c>  
        Order allow,deny  
        Allow from all  
    </IfModule>  
</Directory>  
<Location /tiki/files>  
    AllowOverride All  
    Options -Indexes FollowSymLinks MultiViews ExecCGI  
    <IfModule mod_access.c>  
        Order allow,deny  
        Allow from all  
    </IfModule>  
    <IfModule mod_mime.c>
```

```
    SetHandler default-handler  
  </IfModule>  
</Location>
```

Before Mapserver 4.6, php mapscript was obliged to run under a php cgi module. This is why the map rendering page is called tiki-map.phtml instead of the classical php extension. Fortunately since, the mapscript runs inside the php apache module.

When someone wants to download a layer, all the files are copied in the /tiki/files location for download. Unfortunately on my system the file with the extension .MAP are handled as html maps. I created a special directive for http to handle all the files in the /tiki/files directory as normal files as you can see in the apache configuration file above.

## Automatic removal of generated images

You also need to add a file to delete generated images, or the /var/www/html/map/images directory will grow indefinitely. I use a file in cron: /etc/cron.hourly/mapwatch

```
/usr/sbin/tmpwatch -f 2 /var/www/html/map/images/
```

This will check every hours for file older than 2 hours and delete them.

## Complete setup in Tiki

Finish the setup on the admin panel with **Maps Config**. If you have used the tikiwiki-mapdata package ensure the default mapfile is world.map.

Then you need to create a mapfile and set the correct paths see **Maps Mapfile Tutorial**. If you have used the tikiwiki-mapdata and the paths indicated in this install then you should be set, otherwise you need to edit the world.map file to point to the various paths you have chosen.

Finally ensure that some groups have the correct permissions to view, create and delete mapfiles and their data.

---

### Maps Config

On this page you configure the following:

full path to mapfiles:	the location where are the .map files on this server
default mapfile:	the map that is displayed by default when you click on maps on the application menu
Wiki Page for Help:	a wiki page to explain how the maps interface is working
Wiki Page for Comments:	a wiki page to put any type of comments
Full path to gdaltindex:	the path on this server of gdaltindex to allow the system to create a tiled shapefile of images
Full path to ogr2ogr:	the path on this server to the ogr2ogr binary to allow the system to create shapefiles containing user position (My Preferences) or image position (Image Galleries)
Map Zone:	select which zone in degrees you are working with

- Click on the button **change preferences** to update the above
  
- Click on the button **Generate User Map** to create a shapefile containing the position of all the registered users who have indicated a latitude and longitude in their preferences.

---

## Tikibot

# Tikibot

---

## Tikibot User

# Tikibot User

---

## Tikibot Admin

# Tikibot Admin

---

## Tikibot Details

# Tikibot Details

---

### Voice Tiki

# Voice Tiki

---

### Voice Tiki User

# Voice Tiki User

---

### Voice Tiki Admin

# Voice Tiki Admin

---

### Voice Tiki Details

# Voice Tiki Details

---

### Mobile Tiki

# Mobile Tiki

All TikiWiki based sites have the ability to be browsable through WAP enabled mobile phones or PDA pocket based browsers, thanks to the power of the HAWHAW library.

This is currently limited to Wiki pages and Articles. Future support for other TikiWiki areas and authentication is planned for the future.

You can follow its development on this dedicated Mobile Tiki website:

- <http://mobile.tikiwiki.org/> 
-

### Mobile Tiki User

# Mobile Tiki User

---

### Mobile Tiki Admin

# Mobile Tiki Admin

---

### Mobile Tiki Details

# Mobile Tiki Details

---

### Structures

# Structures

Structures are used to group an arbitrary set of wiki pages into a navigable tree . They are very useful for grouping Wiki pages into documentation, manuals, FAQs, HowTos, etc.

# Managing Structures

Clicking on 'Structures' in the Wiki sub-menu will take you to a page listing existing structures and a form to create new structures. This menu item will only be displayed if you have the permission "tiki\_p\_edit\_structures"

*insert graphic*

### Create New Structure

The 'Structure ID' is used as the name of the structures *root* Wiki page. If the Wiki page doesn't exist it will be created when creating the structure.

The 'Alias' is an alternative name for the structures *root* Wiki page. If an alias exists, this will be used in preference to the real Wiki page name. This is useful for common page names such as 'contents' or 'introduction'

The 'Tree' field enables the user to provide a skeleton structure tree. Each line of the tree indicates a consecutive Wiki page in the structure. If the Wiki page does

not exist, it will be created.

- To create an indented tree structure, precede the Wiki name with space(s).
- To include an alias for the wiki name, append the Wiki name with '-> alias'.

An example of 'Tree' might look like this:

Tree Example

```
Wiki -> Introduction
Using Wiki Pages
  Wiki Links
  Wiki Lists
  Wiki Images
  Wiki Text Formatting
  Wiki Special Characters
Wiki Admin -> Administration
Wiki Details
```

### **Editing an Existing Structure**

Select a Structure from the list to open the 'modify structure' page.

#### ***insert graphic***

The form at the top indicates the current node. The default selected node is the structures 'root' page. Select an alternative structure node to edit from the 'Structure Layout' tree at the bottom of the page.

Use the 'Update' button to add or update the current nodes 'Page alias'.

Use the navigation buttons to move the current node to a different position within the 'Structure Layout'. The current node will be highlighted in bold (chris.holman: The root node is never highlighted. Perhaps it should be.)

#### **Adding Pages to Current Node**

Any pages that you add will be added as sub-pages to the 'current node' and inserted after the page indicated by 'After Page'.

#### **Structure Layout**

The 'Structure Layout' provides links to:

- View the referenced wiki page: Only if you have the relevant permissions
- Edit the referenced wiki page: Only if you have the relevant permissions
- Remove the page reference from structure: If you click 'x' to remove a page, the system will ask if you want to remove the page from the structure or if you want to remove the page completely.



### *insert graphic*

Note that if the page being removed has subpages, all the subpages will be removed recursively from the structure. (The underlying wiki pages will also be removed if you choose the 'remove page too' option)

## Navigating Structures

When browsing through the Wiki:

- If a page is part of one or more structures, a select box containing the word 'structures...' will appear at the top of the page. Select the structure name from this list to activate it.
- If the wiki page is the structures root Wiki page, the structure will be automatically activated.

Once a structure is active, pages belonging to the structure are displayed with a navigation bar.

### *insert graphic*

The navigation bar provides icons to the next, parent, previous and homepage structure pages.

## Table Of Contents

Using a {toc} tag in a page belonging to a structure will display a Table Of Contents for any sub-pages the page has. For this to work, the page must have sub-pages.

- Used in the structures 'root' page, this creates a full TOC.
- Used in a sub-page, this creates a chapter TOC.

### *insert graphic*

## Slide Show

If the slide-show feature is enabled, selecting the 'slides' button from the page bar will display a structure page as a slide-show!

## PDF Creation

If the pdf-creation feature is enabled, selecting the 'pdf' icon whilst viewing a

structure page will populate the pdf document with the relevant wiki pages from the structure. (chris.holman: Aliases and toc items dont work at present)

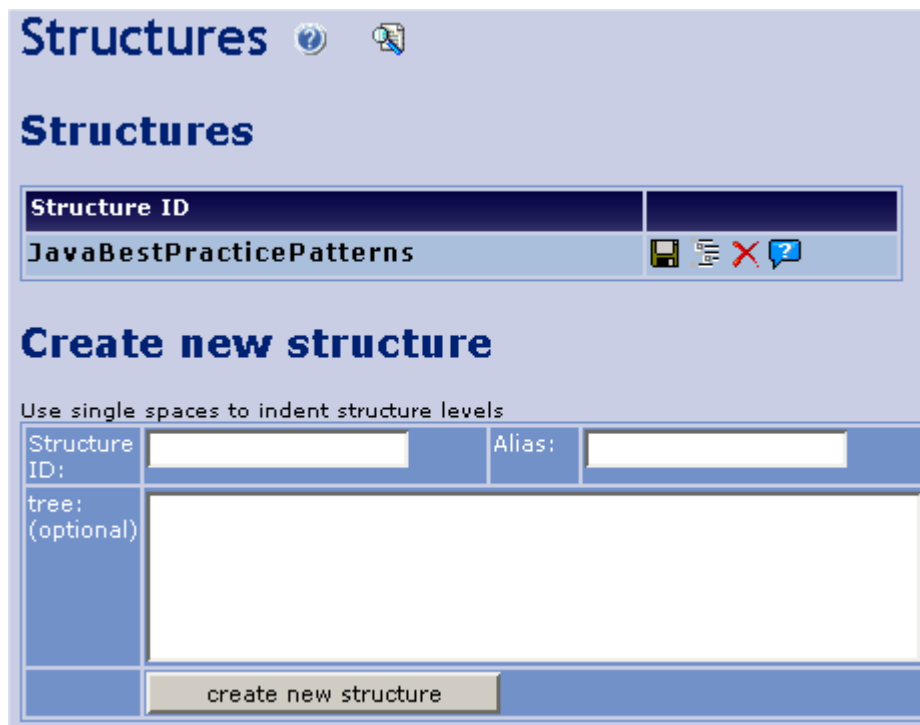
## Structures User

# Structures user

Structures are used to group an arbitrary set of wiki pages into a navigable tree . They are very useful for grouping Wiki pages into documentation, manuals, FAQs, HowTos, etc.

## Managing Structures

Clicking on 'Structures' in the Wiki sub-menu will take you to a page listing existing structures and a form to create new structures. This menu item will only be displayed if you have the permission "tiki\_p\_edit\_structures"



The screenshot shows the 'Structures' management interface. At the top, there is a header 'Structures' with a help icon and a search icon. Below this is a sub-header 'Structures'. A table lists existing structures, with one entry: 'JavaBestPracticePatterns'. To the right of this entry are icons for save, edit, delete, and help. Below the table is a section titled 'Create new structure'. Underneath this title is the instruction 'Use single spaces to indent structure levels'. The form contains two input fields: 'Structure ID:' and 'Alias:'. Below these is a large text area labeled 'tree: (optional)'. At the bottom of the form is a button labeled 'create new structure'.

### Create New Structure

The 'Structure ID' is used as the name of the structures *root* Wiki page. If the Wiki page doesn't exist it will be created when creating the structure.

The 'Alias' is an alternative name for the structures *root* Wiki page. If an alias exists, this will be used in preference to the real Wiki page name. This is useful for common page names such as 'contents' or 'introduction'

The 'Tree' field enables the user to provide a skeleton structure tree. Each line of the tree indicates a consecutive Wiki page in the structure. If the Wiki page does not exist, it will be created.

- To create an indented tree structure, precede the Wiki name with space(s).
- To include an alias for the wiki name, append the Wiki name with '-> alias'.

An example of 'Tree' might look like this:

Tree Example

```
Wiki -> Introduction
  Using Wiki Pages
    Wiki Links
    Wiki Lists
    Wiki Images
    Wiki Text Formatting
    Wiki Special Characters
  Wiki Admin -> Administration
  Wiki Details
```

### **Editing an Existing Structure**

Select a Structure from the list to open the 'modify structure' page.

## Modify Structure: JavaBestPracticePatterns

### Current Node: FormattingCode

Page alias	Code Formatting	update
Move	◀ ▶ ↕	

Add pages to current node:

After page	OrderingRules
create page	<input type="text"/>
Use pre-existing page	BDJavaAndIPMeeting JavaBestPracticePattern JavaBestPracticePatterns JavaLanguage JavaLookAndFeelDesignGuidelines
filter	<input type="text"/>
	update

### Structure Layout

JavaBestPracticePatterns [view |edit]

- 1 NamingPatterns [x] [view |edit]
- **2 FormattingCode(Code Formatting) [x] [view |edit]**
  - 2.1 OrderingRules [x] [view |edit]
- 3 ObjectBehaviour [x] [view |edit]
- 4 ObjectState [x] [view |edit]
- 5 TypePatterns [x] [view |edit]
- 6 CollectionIdioms [x] [view |edit]
- 7 PackagingRules [x] [view |edit]
- 8 ResourceIdioms [x] [view |edit]
- 9 CommonSense [x] [view |edit]
- 10 CompletionCriteria [x] [view |edit]

The form at the top indicates the current node. The default selected node is the structures 'root' page. Select an alternative structure node to edit from the 'Structure Layout' tree at the bottom of the page. Use the 'Update' button to add or update the current nodes 'Page alias'. Use the navigation buttons to move the current node to a different position within the 'Structure Layout'. The current node will be highlighted in bold (chris.holman: The root node is never highlighted. Perhaps it should be.)

#### Adding Pages to Current Node

Any pages that you add will be added as sub-pages to the 'current node' and inserted after the page indicated by 'After Page'.

- If you enter a Wiki name in the 'create page' field, a new Wiki page of this name will be created. If populated, this field takes precedence over the 'Use pre-existing page' field.
- The 'Use pre-existing page' field allows the user to insert one or more existing pages. The filter field can be used to restrict the set of existant pages.

### Structure Layout

The 'Structure Layout' provides links to:

- View the referenced wiki page: Only if you have the relevant permissions
- Edit the referenced wiki page: Only if you have the relevant permissions
- Remove the page reference from structure: If you click 'x' to remove a page, the system will ask if you want to remove the page from the structure or if you want to remove the page completely.

Note that if the page being removed has subpages, all the subpages will be removed recursively from the structure. (The underlying wiki pages will also be removed if you choose the 'remove page too' option)

## Navigating Structures

When browsing through the Wiki:

- If a page is part of one or more structures, a select box containing the word 'structures...' will appear at the top of the page. Select the structure name from this list to activate it.
- If the wiki page is the structures root Wiki page, the structure will be automatically activated.

Once a stucture is active, pages belonging to the structure are displayed with a navigation bar.



## Structures Admin

# Structures Admin

---

## Structures Details

# Structures Details

---

## Comments

# Comments

Copied from [CommentDoc](#)

Comments can be used in:

- Articles
- Wiki pages
- Blogs
- Blog posts
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- Polls
- FAQs
- Trackers

If you enable comments for some of the features of Tiki from the admin menu you will see links to show/hide comments and the number of comments for the object being viewed. In this section we'll explain comments for Tiki pages, everything will be the same for other Tiki features such as articles, blogs, polls, etc.

### *insert graphic*

If you see this bar at the bottom of the central part of the screen (or somewhere else if the customization changed the appearance) then you can see/enter comments. Click the Show comments link to display comments and a form to post new comments (if you have the permission).

## Posting a Comment

If you are a registered user, you should first login before posting comments, this will allow the posting to be attributed to you.

Both title and comment body are required.

## Controlling the display of comments

### *insert graphic*

You can see here the comments panel, you can enter a new comment, set which comments you want displayed and see the comments. To get started enter some comment.

**Posted messages**

<b>Messages</b>	<b>Style</b>	<b>Sort</b>	<b>Threshold</b>	<b>Find</b>	<input type="text" value="set"/>	<b>Top</b>
10 ▾	Threaded ▾	Score ▾	All ▾	<input type="text"/>		

The toolbar at the top can be used to configure how many comments to display per page, how comments will be sorted (Score/Date), the minimum number of points for a comment to be displayed, the minimum score for a comment to be displayed (threshold) and a find box to filter comments containing some word. The top link can be used to get back to first page of comments from any page of comments. If you reply to a comment replies will be displayed nested to the comment as in the following screen:

### *insert graphic*

Clicking any of the replies will take you to a page where replies for the comment are displayed and you can enter a new reply or reply an existing reply.

If you are admin or the comment was entered by you as a registered user (not anonymous) you will be able to edit a comment after posting. You will be able to remove this comment only if you have the right permission.

## Viewing Recent Comments

The **wiki\_last\_comments** module can be assigned to a column in Admin Modules, or inserted into a page using

```
{MODULE(module=>wiki_last_comments)}{MODULE}
```

Which will produce:



#### Last wiki comments

- 1) **Users Management:** When some users register themselves, they receive an email with a confirmation link.
- 2) **Categories:** Re: Need to add PluginCatorphans
- 3) **Categories:** Need to add PluginCatorphans
- 4) **ExternalWiki:** Apostrophes from external wikis
- 5) **Login Config:** LDAP passwords
- 6) **Login Config:** Mlssing fields
- 7) **Wiki-Syntax Links:** Page needs to discuss link aliasing
- 8) **Tutorial: Editing Wiki Pages:** Re: Demo movie
- 9) **Tutorial: Editing Wiki Pages:** Demo movie
- 10) **Rewrite Rules:** Restricting 'other' files

More documentation

---

#### Comments User

# Comments User

---

#### Comments Admin

# Comments Admin

---

#### Voting

The voting options on each comment contribute to a user karma score system.

#### Comment perms

Comments in wiki

There is a super- permission `tiki_p_wiki_view_comments` that will allow or not comment on wiki page. Without this perm, you can't view, post, edit a wiki comment. It's overwrite all others folowing perms.

Comments in wiki, faq, poll...

- to view a comment, you need `tiki_p_read_comments`
- to post a comment, you need `tiki_p_post_comments`
- to edit a comment, you need to be the author or to have the perm `tiki_p_edit_comments`
- to delete a comment, you need the perm `tiki_p_remove_comments`

Of course a `tiki_p_admin` can do whatever he wants

---

## Comments Details

# Comments Details

---

## Copyright Management

The Copyright Management System (or , MS) is a way of licensing your content, typically under and open or free content license, such as the Gnu Free Documentation License or the Open Game License. By switching this feature on you can define a content license for all your wiki content, associate copyright notices with individual pages and even display a full license for printing.

### Useful Links

- GNU/FDL  
<http://www.fsf.org/copyleft/fdl.html> ↗
  - Open Game License  
<http://www.opengamefoundation.org/ogl.html> ↗
  - Open Publication License  
<http://opencontent.org/openpub/> ↗
- 

## Copyright Management User

# Copyright Management User

The Copyright Management System ( , MS) allows you to specify a content license under which all wiki pages are published when submitted. When this feature is activated by an administrator (see **Copyright Management Admin** for more information) new form elements appear on the Wiki Edit Page :  
picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms\\_screenshot2.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms_screenshot2.png)

This allows users submitting content to attach a copyright notice to the page. The user enters the title of work being copyright (which may or may not be different to the page title), the year of copyright and the author(s) associated with the content.

Normal users can only add copyright notices to a page, and only administrators can delete or modify submitted ones. Copyright notices can then be recalled using the Copyright Notice Plugin. This is normally only done in the license page. To view the license for a particular page click on the license link at the bottom of the page, for example:

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms\\_screenshot4.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms_screenshot4.png)

This will take you to the license (in this case the OpenGameLicense) for that page. Depending on how the administrator has set-up the license you may also be able to peruse all the copyright pages for that page as well.

Similarly, clicking on the PrintIcon will now take you to a full print-out of your page content *and* the license under which it is published.

### Editing Copyright Notices

The MS uses the permission `tiki_p_edit_copyrights` which allows users to access the copyrights edit page. To access the copyrights edit page for a particular page, go to the license page for that page and click on the link at the bottom of the page:  
picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms\\_screenshot5.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms_screenshot5.png)

If you have permissions this will take you to the copyright edits page where you can edit the copyright notices for that page:  
picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms\\_screenshot6.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/cms_screenshot6.png)

This page allows administrators to alter the order of copyright notices, edit their data or add new copyright notices.

To edit a copyright notice simply alter the information in the text boxes and click the 'edit' button on the right-hand side.

To delete a copyright notice click on the 'x' on the right-hand side.

To move a copyright notice's order click on 'up' or 'down' on the right-hand side.

To add a new copyright notice simply fill in the information in the empty text boxes at the bottom of this page, as you would adding a copyright notice in the wiki edit page above, and click the 'add' button.

---

### Copyright Management Admin

# Copyright Management Admin

---

Copyright Management Details

# Copyright Management Details

---

Communications Center

# Communications Center

---

Communications Center User

# Communications Center User

---

Communications Center Admin

# Communications Center Admin

---

Communications Center Details

# Communications Center Details

---

Spellchecking

# Spellchecking

---

Spellchecking User

# Spellchecking User

---

Spellchecking Admin

# Spellchecking Admin

---

Spellchecking Details

# Spellchecking Details

---

Redirect On Error

---

Redirect On Error User

---

Redirect On Error Admin

---

Redirect On Error Details

---

Drawings

# Drawings

---

Drawings User

# Drawings User

---

Drawings Admin

# Drawings Admin

---

## Drawings Details

# Drawings Details

---

## HTML Pages

# HTML Pages

Well designed portal systems let users edit HTML pages freely that can be displayed at the center section of the site by following a link on a menu, article or some site section. This can be used to construct sub-homes, presentation pages, help pages, ads, or anything you want.

In Tiki this is available and is extended with the brand - new (maybe not so new) addition of dynamic pages. Let's start.

First of all enable HTML pages from the main admin screen if you do want to use pages.

## What are HTML pages

HTML pages are editable (with the right permission) blocks of HTML that can be displayed verbatim at the center of a Tiki site by using a link such as the following: `tiki-page.php?pageName=soccer_results`

Note tha HTML pages are identified by their name so names must be unique.

You will be able to create two kinds of pages: static or dynamic.

Static vrs dynamic pages

Let's start by saying that dynamic or static pages are edited and created without differences, the difference between dynamic and static pages is how the page is displayed to the user.

We'll let you know more about static & dynamic pages after learning how to edit HTML pages, after all dynamic and static pages are edited in the same way.

## Editing a page

To edit HTML pages follow the "edit HTML pages" link from the admin section of the application menu. A screen similar to the following one will be displayed:

Note that you have to enter a name and the page content just that. The page content can be any HTML with the addition of dynamic zones. Dynamic zones are portions of the HTML page that will be replaced by content taken from the database. For example you can create the following HTML page

Soccer results

```
<table>
```

```
<tr><td>Liverpool {ed id=liverpool}</td><td>Man UTD {ed id=manutd}</td></tr>
```

```
....
```

```
</table>
```

The syntax to include dynamic zones can be {ed id=name} or {ted id=name} the difference is what HTML element is used to edit the zone, ed uses text input boxes while ted uses textareas  
After creating the page and saving it you will see a link to "content" from the listing of pages, clicking on content will take you to a screen where you can edit each dynamic zone on a page:  
Important: when editing an HTML page line feeds are automatically converted to HTML <br/> tags  
Note that static pages can use dynamic zones as well as dynamic pages.

### Applying templates for HTML pages

Note that you can choose to apply a template for HTML pages, this can be very useful to automate the creation of pages from a established template where you can indicate dynamic zones. To create a template for HTML pages go to the edit content templates section in the admin menu.

### Editing dynamic zones for a page

This is a screen where you can edit the dynamic zones for a page:  
Note that you just edit the zone and click update you can edit the zones from the listing directly or clicking on edit to individually edit a zone in a larger area.  
Static and dynamic pages again  
When a page is accessed using tiki-page.php?pageName=some the page will be rendered replacing the dynamic zones by their values, if no value is found then the zone is displayed as blank. Now is where the difference between a static or a dynamic page can be noticed:  
For static pages the page will be rendered and if the user wants to refresh the page to update dynamic zones the page must be reloaded by refreshing the browser as usual.  
For dynamic pages the page will be automatically updated without refreshing at specified intervals (in seconds) that can be specified when editing a page. So if a page is dynamic the dynamic zones in a page will be updated without the user refreshing the window and without forcing the page to be reloaded. This is specially useful for "live" results, stock values, auction prices, etc etc.

### How dynamic pages work

So how dynamic pages work? Simple in dynamic pages an invisible "iframe" is used along with the page this invisible frame is reloaded at the interval specified as the page refresh rate. This invisible frame picks the values for dynamic zones from the database and using javascript updates the page dynamic zones without regenerating the page.

### Permissions

The following permissions can be used to control HTML pages.

---

**HTML Pages User**

# HTML Pages User

---

**HTML Pages Admin**

# HTML Pages Admin

---

**HTML Pages Details**

# HTML Pages Details

---

**Dynamic Content**

# Dynamic Content

Ostensibly this is referring to the dynamic variable

`%date%`

---

**Dynamic Content User**

# Dynamic Content User

---

**Dynamic Content Admin**

# Dynamic Content Admin

---



## Dynamic Content Details

# Dynamic Content Details

---

## Polls

# Polls

## Feature Overview

Polls are a common feature in user-community sites. Using Tiki you can create as many polls as you want and display from zero to n polls in the Tiki pages. You can also have a set of several active polls and display only one poll in a page. In that case, Tiki will rotate through the set of polls. Users with the right permission can see poll results, examine old polls and vote in any poll that is not closed.

## Set-up Polls as a Side Module

Once you have activated the polls feature you can assign a poll to side module using **Create new user module** under Admin Modules, see [Modules User](#).

---

## Polls User

# Polls User

---

## Polls Admin

# Polls Admin

Settings Documentation



Clicking the **Polls** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see [Tiki Config](#) ) takes you to the Polls settings.

# Configure Polls

You can set up polls using this panel.

picture not found picture not found

TikiTeam  
Who is working here generally?

tw: [UserPagejbutler](#)

---

## Polls Details

# Polls Details

---

## RSS Feeds

# RSS Feeds

## Feature Overview

From Here

- See also: [RSS Admin](#)

Useful Links

---

## RSS Feeds User

# RSS Feeds User

NOTE: Below should probably go in RSS Modules? which needs to be added to the

table of contents.

To add an RSS feed from another site in to your tikiwiki site:

1. Admin > RSS Modues > Create new RSS module
  2. Complete the form using a descriptive title and proper RSS URL. Save.
  3. Note the RSS Channel ID
  4. On the wiki page, add {rss id=n} when "n" is the RSS channel ID. Put a title above. Preview. OR Add in Admin > Modules > User Module, create a new user modules with the RSS channel ID.
- 

### **RSS Admin**

(:arrow:) Moved to: [\*\*RSS Config\*\*](#)

---

### **RSS Feeds Details**

# RSS Feeds Details

---

### **Shoutbox**

# Shoutbox

---

### **Shoutbox User**

# Shoutbox User

---

### **Shoutbox Admin**

# Shoutbox Admin

---

## Shoutbox Details

# Shoutbox Details

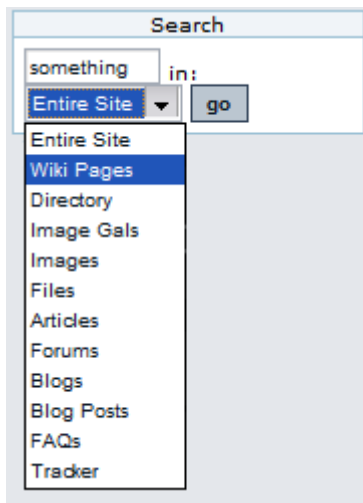
## Search

# Search

### Help!

If you can't find results that you think should appear, first check the search mode.

# Overview



If the search feature is enabled and you assign the search box module to the left or right side bar, you will see a search box where that you can use to search content in Tiki. The search box module [?](#) will display a select box allowing you to search for something in a specific content :

- Entire site : sum of all fields below
  - Wiki Pages : name, data
  - Directory : name, description
  - Articles : title, heading
- [+]**
- body is also searched but only in **List articles** (this is a bug) *Chealer9 20031025*
  - Image Galleries : name, description
  - Images : name, description

- File Galleries : name, description
- Forums : forum posts title and content
- Blogs : title, description
- Blog posts : data
- FAQs : name, description

Once you select an option and click the search button you will be redirected to the searchresults page :

**Search results:**

Search in:

All Wiki galleries images files forums faqs blogs blog posts directory articles

Found "something" in 967 pages

Find something go

Wiki: [20040302MarcLaporteInterview](#) (Hits: 1002)  
!!!Interview with Marc Laporte (Tiki CMS/Groupware) !!!Language: English !!!March 2, 2004, 17C  
index.php/2004/05/19/p86-interview\_with\_Marc\_Laporte|Link to the audio fil  
Last modification date: Tuesday 01 February, 2005 [06:41:43]

Wiki: [TikiBot](#) (Hits: 2606)  
!! Tikibot has mutated in Lulubot ! find more on [http://lulubot.berlios.de] "This documenation i  
channel #tikiwiki at irc.freenode.net you can talk with tiki,  
Last modification date: Tuesday 06 July, 2004 [03:06:20]

Wiki: [SoupyBot](#) (Hits: 632)  
Soupy is a bot that resides on #tikiwiki. It is less specific than TikiBot, i.e., it lacks a search fun  
include dictionary, google search and translation. Type the comm  
Last modification date: Monday 12 July, 2004 [21:05:37]

Wiki: [TikiPageGroups](#) (Hits: 1002)  
This feature (the ability to group pages together, navigate between pages in a group and refere  
collaboration. For those that think Tiki does this already, please read the [htt  
Last modification date: Friday 14 January, 2005 [13:24:55]

In this screen you will see a list of results for the search. The links below the title can be used to search in different areas of Tiki the same way as the search module does. If there are a lot of results you will see links to the next/prev pages at the bottom. The number of items where the search criteria was found can be located just below the links to search different features.

This integrated search engine is very useful to quick-find content or information in Tiki and it will automatically detect which features/sections are enabled or disabled allowing the search only in enabled features. If the Wiki is disabled, for example, you won't be able to find things in Wiki pages.

## Search modes

If you want, you can enable full-text search. With this option your results will be ordered according to their relevance to the search terms.

The search can be configured by the administrator as a simple search or as a full text search. (A user knows it is a full text search because each result has a relevance indicator)

### Simple search

If the administrator has not activated the "full-text" feature, the search is done in a very simple way.

Each query is split into words (a word is recognized as delimited by space). An object will be returned only if it contains each string word.

Example: If the query is "full text", only the object that contains "full" and that contains "text" will be returned.

Be careful that it is not "contains the word" but contains the string; it means that an object with "fulltext" will be returned, as an object with "faithfully textual" or "carefull texture".

Be also careful that an object has some hidden text like the links. So, an object that contains "http://fulltext/|Mysite" is selected.

The search is performed in case-insensitive fashion. It means that if you look for "tiki", you will find objects than contain the word "Tiki" and not "tiki".

Advantages:

- quick
- pick up everything that is indexed (see the section describing the search space)

Disadvantages:

- The search is very noisy: a lot of objects are returned
- There is no relevance and the objects are not sorted. It means that an object with 2 occurrences of the searched word will be returned as an object with only 1 occurrence.
- the word is exactly seached, it means "cliche" will not find "cliché"

### Full text search

**WARNING** : No such module INCLUDE!

**Tiki:FullTextSearch** ¶

### Word highlighting

In v1.9 there is a new searchbox (search\_new) and results page (tiki-searchindex.php) that together provide highlighting of search words. Additionally, by adding "&highlight= *words*", where *words* are the words you want to highlight, to the end of the URL (web address) for any wiki page, the words will be highlighted in the page.

## Word highlighting from referrals

In v1.9 there is an experimental feature that automatically highlights search words when one follows a link from a search engine. For more information, please see [Referer Search Highlighting](#) and [Tiki:SearchDev](#).

Try it out

- Use the search module (search\_box) or get directly to the [Search results page](#).
- In v1.9, use the highlighting search module (search\_new) or get directly to the [Search index page](#).
- View this page with the word *highlight* highlighted:  
<http://doc.tikiwiki.org/Search?highlight=highlight>

Notes

For more information

[Tiki:SearchDev](#)

---

## Search User

# Search User

The administrator can choose between 2 engines. [Search Admin](#)

## Database search engine

### Tikiwiki search engine

- search without case consideration
  - don't index words less than 3 characters (no stoplist)
  - relevance and ranking don't work. The relevance is based on function of the object type on number of reads, hits.... there is no ranking
  - can search on a part of a word
-

## Search Admin

# Search Admin

## 2 search modules

There are 2 modules in Tikiwiki to do the search

- the module **search\_box**. It is called "**database search**". It uses the database ability to do the search and the indexation. It can be use with a fulltext capacity or not.
- the module **search\_new**: It is called the "**database independant search**". The index table is managed by tikiwiki (since 1.8)

Both are activated as soon as you check the search feature.

### Database search configuration

This module is working mainly with Mysql. Other database can have problem. The features depend also on the database version you are using.

See also

- [Search Config](#)

---

## Search Details

# Search Details

---

## MyTiki

# MyTiki

---



### MyTiki Admin

# MyTiki Admin

---

### MyTiki Details

# MyTiki Details

---

### Webmail

# Webmail

---

### Inter-User Messages

# Inter-User Messages

---

### User Notepad

# User Notepad

---

### User Tasks

# User Tasks

This feature is used to admin user tasks, similar to a to-do list, the tasks screen is divided in two parts: a list of tasks and a form to enter a new task:

## The list of tasks:



This list shows the all tasks to a user and some shared tasks.

- There are three different types of tasks
  - private
  - >> received task, another user submitted a task to you
  - << submitted task, you submitted this task to another user
  - >< shared task, this task is public to a group where you are a member.

To use the features send, receive and shared tasks you have to set special rights on users and groups. A user can only send if he has the right `tiki_p_tasks_send` and the receiver `tiki_p_tasks_receive` rights. Also if you want to share a task you must be in a group with the right `tiki_p_tasks_receive`.

There is also a special right `tiki_p_tasks_admin`. This right allows an admin to see all shared tasks and edit them.

- Icons:



means that this task is accepted by user and creator



means that only one user has accepted the task, beware if you are making changes on submitted or received task it will get this state as default



one user has rejected this task

- States
  - waiting / not started
  - open / in process
  - completed (100%)

A task is in the state waiting while the percentage is not set, after opening a task or setting the percentage between 0 and 100 it will go into the state open, if you mark a task as completed or set the percentage on 100 it will be in the completed state. The task list offers you to hide completed tasks with the checkbox completed.

- Trash

Similar to many other programmes is here also something like a trash implemented. You can mark tasks as trash and you can empty the trash with the button "empty trash".

**But** if you are not the creator you can only move the task in the trash of the creator if he has the option rights by creator disabled.

## Tasks and dates:

From the user preferences screen the user can choose if he wants to use dates for

tasks. What is this? If dates are being used then tasks with a start date higher than the current date ARE not displayed in the listing or module, this can be used to program tasks for the future. If dates are not used then all tasks are always active. Note: when dates are in use the task listing will show links to display all tasks or tasks using dates only.

## Editing a task:



This form is used to enter or edit a task, the start date field is only shown if using dates.

## View tasks



## The user tasks module

normal Usertasks-module (shows own and received tasks)



public Usertask-module (shows public tasks) (this picture with activated mouse-over-feature)



A special module is provided to show tasks to the user when using your Tiki site. The module is called user tasks and it is displayed on the left. The user can add a new task to the list of tasks and he can also view the tasks that are active and mark some tasks as done or delete a number of tasks if he wants. This nice module is perfect to be used as a to-do list.

---

User Files

# User Files

---

User Calendar

# User Calendar

---

User Menus

# User Menus

---

User Preferences

# User Preferences

---

User Bookmarks

# User Bookmarks

---

User Modules

# User Modules

---

User Watches

# User Watches

---

## Newsreader

# Newsreader

---

## Admin Panels

# Admin Panels

---

## Features Admin

# Features Admin

Settings Documentation

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\\_features.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin_features.png)

Clicking the **Features** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see [TikiAdminSettings](#) ) takes you to the **Administration** screen, where you can enable or disable Tiki features. Thus, you can tailor Tiki to your specific needs without configuring the entire application. Indeed, the default installation of Tiki enables very few features.

When you disable a feature all the screens and modules related to the feature will produce an error screen if accessed.

TikiFeatures provides short descriptions of the main Tiki features. Follow the links below for additional documentation on each of the features you can enable or disable from this screen. *In addition, while viewing the **Administration** screen, you may click any term for help!*

---

# Tiki sections and features

Wiki - WikiDoc

Image Galleries - ImageGalleryDoc

Articles (aka CMS) - ArticleDoc

FAQs - FaqDoc

Chat - ChatDoc

Directory of links - DirectoryDoc

Newsreader - NewsreaderDoc

Polls - PollDoc

Quizzes - QuizzesDoc

Blogs - BlogDoc

File Galleries - FileGalleryDoc

Submissions of articles

Forums - ForumDoc

Shoutbox - ShoutboxDoc

Trackers - TrackerDoc

Webmail - WebmailDoc

Surveys - SurveyDoc

Ephemerides - EphemeridesDoc

Featured links - FeaturedLinksDoc  
Banner ads - BannersDoc  
Games - GamesDoc  
Newsletters - NewslettersDoc  
HTML pages - HtmlAndDynamicPagesDoc  
Mini Calendar - MiniCalendar  
Calendar - CalendarDoc  
Search - SearchDoc  
Full Text Search - FullTextSearch  
Search stats - SearchStats  
Live support system - LiveSupportDoc  
Workflow engine - GalaxiaWorkflowDoc  
Categories - CategoryDoc  
Show Category Path  
Show Category Objects

## Content Features

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\\_features\\_contentfeatures.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin_features_contentfeatures.png)

Hotwords	If enabled, Wiki pages are parsed and some words are automatically converted to HTML links. E.g., <i>TVCrit</i> becomes <a href="http://www.TVCrit.com">http://www.TVCrit.com</a> . Admins can edit these words from the <b>Admin Hotwords</b> screen.
Hotwords in New Windows	When enabled clicking a Hotword bring the target page in a new window instead of changing the current page.
Custom Home	If enabled, a customized page will serve as the home page for the Tiki.
Drawings	Enables JGraphPad drawing tool.
Charts	Enables charts for featured links.
Edit templates	Dynamic template editing from within Tiki. Permits the rearrangement of Tiki's headers, footers, and columns.
Edit CSS	Dynamic CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) editing from within Tiki. Permits the changing of Tiki's style (fonts, colors, etc.)
Dynamic Content System	Edit blocks of text or HTML code that can be included in any template or user module.
Allow Smileys	Permit emoticons in forum/blog posts, Wiki pages, etc.

## Administration Features

picture not found  
[img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\\_features\\_administrationfeatures.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin_features_administrationfeatures.png)

Banning system	Ban unruly users.
Stats	Site statistics.
PHPOpenTracker	A logging engine that logs each request to a website into a database. <b>Not implemented</b>
Referer stats	Tracks which sites have referred users to your site.
Theme control	Admin can make sections, categories or individual objects use different themes.
Debugger Console	Analyze the operation of your Tiki.
Communications (send/receive objects)	Users may exchange Tiki objects with each other and admin.
XMLRPC API	The Blogger XMLRPC API, which allows Blogger-compatible applications to manage Tiki blogs. Note that the API is carefully implemented to respect Tiki permissions so it is NOT a security compromise to enable this feature. It is as safe as the rest of the site.
Contact Us	Contact-us feature includes a contact form and an email link that is coded to defeat spammers.

# User Features

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\\_features\\_userfeatures.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin_features_userfeatures.png)

These settings apply only to registered users.

User Preferences Screen	A screen where users can set up their preferences--for example, their themes.
User Bookmarks	Users get a personal hyperlink directory.
User Watches	Users can configure the blogs, forums, Wiki pages, etc. that they are monitoring ("watching").
User Tasks	Users get a to-do lists.
User Files	Allows users to upload personal files.
<u><b>Users can Configure Modules</b></u>	Users with the right permissions can configure modules to their needs.
<u><b>Users can Shade Modules</b></u>	Users can flip between show module title only and show module title+contents
User Menu	Users can create their own menus of Tiki objects.
User Messages	Users can send personal messages between them.
User Notepad	Users can create personal notes.

## General Layout options

picture not found  
[img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\\_features\\_generallayoutoptions.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin_features_generallayoutoptions.png)

<u><b>Left column</b></u>	Display left column
<u><b>Right column</b></u>	Display right column
Top bar	Display the top bar, possibly including site tabs, search, banners, logo and/or login field (depending on theme and preferences)
Bottom bar	Display the bottom bar, possibly including server stats, powered by logos and/or RSS XML links (depending on theme and preferences)
Layout per section	When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections.
Admin layout per section	Access the <b>admin layout</b> screen by clicking the <b>Admin layout per section</b> link.

This part of the features section can be used to control the look and feel (layout) of your Tiki site. Basically, you can enable/disable the columns, the top bar (where the Tiki version is indicated) and the footer. If you want a 1-column layout without changing anything in the code, this is the way to go.

Some users ask if there's a need to display the copyright message for Tiki. The answer is a clear NO. You can use Tiki for whatever you want and you can customize it to look exactly as you want.

Note that you may want to enable the **Layout per section** option. When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections. For example, you may want to remove the right column only in the forums. If so,

enable the **layout per section** option and use the **admin layout** screen to select individual layouts for sections. (Access the **admin layout** screen by clicking the **Admin layout per section** link.)

### Layout-per-section Options

You can select an individual layout for the following sections:

[+]

- Wiki
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- CMS (Articles)
- Blogs
- Forums
- Chat
- Categories
- Games
- FAQs
- HTML sages
- Quizzes
- Surveys
- Webmail
- Trackers
- Featured links
- Directory
- User messages
- Newsreader
- MyTiki
- WorkFlow
- Charts

Remember to click the **Update** button when you've made changes.

TikiTeam

[UserPagejbutler](#)

[UserPagecbarbry](#)

[UserPageMDavey](#) - minor edits

---

### General Admin



# General Admin

This panel allows you to set general preferences and settings for TikiWiki.

- General Preferences
  - Theme: Here you can select a default theme for your pages;
  - Also use transition stylesheet: *since 1.9* Can improve the look of themes designed for older versions of TikiWiki
  - Slideshows Theme: The CSS theme used in slideshows;
  - Use group homepages: If set, each group can have its own homepages. Set this and define homepages for each group in the **Groups Management** panel.
  - Use URI as home page: If marked you can set any valid URI for your home page.
  - Home page: Select your home page here. It can be an article, a blog, wiki page...
  - Language: Your tiki's default language is set here
  - Use database for translation: ?
  - OS: Set the operational system type
  - Php error reporting level for non-admin: If php errors will show up for non-admin users. Set this to "no error reporting" so users won't see any php errors.
- General Settings
  - Disallow access to the site (except for those with permission): This setting blocks the entire site, so you can enter maintenance mode. Only users with specific permission will be allowed in.
  - Message to display when site is closed: Set here the message you would like ordinary users to see.
  - Disallow access to the site (except for those with permission): You can use this option to block access to your site when the load on the server is above a certain threshold.
  - Max average server load threshold in the last minute: Define the maximum server load.
  - Message to display when server is too busy: This message will show up to the users when the server is too busy processing something.
  - Open external links in new window: If you set this, all external links will open in new windows instead of reusing your page's window.
  - Display modules to all groups always: Show all modules to all groups. If unset, you must determine which groups can see the modules you want. Check **Module Admin** page for details.
  - Use cache for external pages: If set, external pages will be cached and stored on the server.
  - Use cache for external images: Same as above, but for images.
  - Use direct pagination links: ?
  - Display menus as folders: ?
  - Use gzipped output: If set, TikiWiki will use gzip to compress the pages

- before sending to the user browser, reducing bandwidth usage.
- Count admin pageviews: If unset, admin navigation will not impact on number of views and hits on the articles, blogs, etc.
- Server name (for absolute URLs): when creating absolute URLs TikiWiki must know your server name.
- Browser title: This will show up on your users' browser title bar for all pages.
- Temporary directory: Set this to a directory with write access to the user running your web server. Default: temp
- Sender email: Email sent from TikiWiki will have this email in the *From* field.
- Contact User: ?
- Store session data in database: If set, session data will be stored in the database instead of memory. This can be used i.e. to share load between servers;
- Use proxy: If the server needs to use a proxy to access external web pages (i.e. to cache them) set this option, and define proxy settings on the next fields.
- Maximum number of records in listings: ?
- Help URL: Should be set to *http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page= ??*
- Date and Time Formats
  - Here you can set Long Date, Short Date, Long Time and Short Time formats, that will be used through all the TikiWiki site. Following is a list of the possible format strings:
    - %a - abbreviated weekday name according to the current locale
    - %A - full weekday name according to the current locale
    - %b - abbreviated month name according to the current locale
    - %B - full month name according to the current locale
    - %c - preferred date and time representation for the current locale
    - %C - century number (the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer, range 00 to 99)
    - %d - day of the month as a decimal number (range 01 to 31)
    - %D - same as NaVd/%y
    - %e - day of the month as a decimal number, a single digit is preceded by a space (range ' 1' to '31')
    - %g - like %G, but without the century.
    - %G - The 4-digit year corresponding to the ISO week number (see %V). This has the same format and value as %Y, except that if the ISO week number belongs to the previous or next year, that year is used instead.
    - %h - same as %b
    - %H - hour as a decimal number using a 24-hour clock (range 00 to 23)
    - %I - hour as a decimal number using a 12-hour clock (range 01 to 12)
    - %j - day of the year as a decimal number (range 001 to 366)

- %m - month as a decimal number (range 01 to 12)
- %M - minute as a decimal number
- %n - newline character
- %p - either `am' or `pm' according to the given time value, or the corresponding strings for the current locale
- %r - time in a.m. and p.m. notation
- %R - time in 24 hour notation
- %S - second as a decimal number
- %t - tab character
- %T - current time, equal to NaVM:%S
- %u - weekday as a decimal number between 1 and 7, with 1 representing Monday
  - Warning: Sun Solaris seems to start with Sunday as 1 although ISO 9889:1999 (the current C standard) clearly specifies that it should be Monday.
- %U - week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Sunday as the first day of the first week
- %V - The ISO 8601:1988 week number of the current year as a decimal number, range 01 to 53, where week 1 is the first week that has at least 4 days in the current year, and with Monday as the first day of the week. (Use %G or %g for the year component that corresponds to the week number for the specified timestamp.)
- %W - week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Monday as the first day of the first week
- %w - day of the week as a decimal, Sunday being 0
- %x - preferred date representation for the current locale without the time
- %X - preferred time representation for the current locale without the date
- %y - year as a decimal number without a century (range 00 to 99)
- %Y - year as a decimal number including the century
- %Z or %z - time zone or name or abbreviation
- %% - a literal `%` character
- Register this site at tikiwiki.org
  - Click on the link to read more details about joining up the tw.o ring of tikiwiki sites.
- Change admin password
  - If you need to change admin password enter the new password twice and hit the button.

---

## Login Config

Settings Documentation

picture not found img/wiki\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//admin\_login.png

Clicking the **Login** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see TikiAdminSettings ) takes you to the Login settings.

## User Registration and Login Settings

In this section of the admin panel you can setup several settings for your user registration and site security features. The settings are the following ones:

picture not found img/wiki\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//SettingsUserReg.png

Authentication method	Choose between Tiki, Web server, and Tiki/Pear::Auth. <i>Tiki</i> will use your user database built into Tiki. <i>Web server</i> will use your web server's authentication. <i>Tiki/Pear::Auth</i> is a combination of the Tiki user database and <b>Pear::Auth</b> , which will allow LDAP? authentication (and others in future?). See below for Pear settings.
Users can register:	If enabled, the login box will display a <b>register</b> link when the user is not logged and the user will have the option to register using a webform. If disabled, each user will need to be setup by an admin.
Request passcode to register:	If enabled, you have to enter a password that will be required to let users register into the system. This can be used in sites where users are <i>invited</i> or they receive a passcode after paying a fee or something like that. Semi-private or semi-public sites may enjoy this feature.
Prevent automatic/robot registration:	If enabled, it will present the new user with a graphic showing a series of numbers. They will need to key in these numbers before they will be allowed to register.
Validate users by emails:	If enabled, then when a user registers Tiki will send the user an email with a link that the user must use to login for the first time. Once logged in using this link, the user will be validated and can login as a regular user. This feature is useful if you as an admin want to be sure that the user email addresses are correct and not fake.
Remind passwords by email:	If enabled, then a link to <b>I forgot my password</b> will be displayed in the login box. Users will be able to enter their login names, and Tiki will send them emails with their passwords.
Reg users can change theme	If enabled, registered users can configure the theme.
Reg users can change language	If enabled, registered users can configure the site's language.
Store plaintext passwords	If enabled, passwords are stored in the database in clear plaintext; and the remind password feature sends the user his password.
If not enabled, only	a hash is stored; and the remind password feature generates a new password and sends that password to the user.
Use challenge-response authentication	If enabled and the user's browser supports JavaScript, passwords ARE NOT SENT across the network. Instead, a challenge response algorithm is used. Tiki generates a challenge code and the browser sends a response based on the challenge that Tiki verifies to login the user. Challenge responses cannot be reused. This method, if enabled, strongly enforces the security of your user passwords. If you use it you don't need an HTTPs connection for extra security. <b>The drawback</b> to this method is that users will have to enter their email address every time they login. - three boxes to fill in not two.
Force to use chars and numbers in passwords	If enabled, Tiki will validate user passwords and reject passwords that do not contain both letters and numbers.
Minimum password length	The minimum length for a password to be accepted.
Passwords are invalid after <i>n</i> days	Tiki will force users to change their passwords after this period.
Allow secure https login	Enable this setting If you want to use an HTTPs connection for login.
HTTP and HTTPs settings	Settings for HTTPs logins. You may have your HTTP and HTTPs server in different URLS/ports.
Remember me feature:	If enabled, this will put a <b>Remember me</b> checkbox for the user's login. You will also need to set how long the server will remember them.

## Case:

- Before 1.10, login is case sensitive. After 1.10, login action is case insensitive. However, a user can use a login with different cases, but the login access and the remind password action are case insensitive (except if another user has the same login in different case).
- password is always case sensitive.

## Pear::Auth settings

Tiki can authenticate users using a LDAP server via **Pear::Auth**. The following settings only make sense, if you have set "Authentication method" to "Tiki/Pear::Auth" in the above dialog. Tiki then uses the LDAP server in addition to its own user database (users\_users) to authenticate users.

picture not found [img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//SettingsUserRegPEAR.png](img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org//SettingsUserRegPEAR.png)

Create user if not in Tiki?	If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. <b>If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in</b>
Create user if not in Auth?	If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. See Pear::Auth on how an entry is created.
Just use tiki auth for admin?	If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".
LDAP Host	The hostname or ip address of you LDAP server (usually localhost).
LDAP Port	The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default).
LDAP Scope	Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used during authentication for finding a user on the LDAP server.
LDAP Base DN	Base DN of the LDAP server. If you leave this empty, Pear::Auth will try to query your LDAP server for its base DN. Example: <b>dc=my- company,dc=com</b>
LDAP User DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=People</b> will search in <b>ou=People,dc=my- company,dc=com</b>
LDAP User attribute	Attribute that contains the username.
LDAP User OC	Object class an entry must have when searching for a user. This is mandatory ! If you dont know what to fill in, use * ( <b>an asterix</b> )
LDAP Group DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=Groups</b> will search in <b>ou=Groups,dc=my- company,dc=com</b>
LDAP Group Attribute	Attribute that contains the group name. Example <b>cn</b>
LDAP Group OC	Objectclass used to create groups. Example <b>groupOfUniqueNames</b> would result in a group search using the filter (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)
LDAP Member Attribute	Attribute used to retrieve group members. Example <b>uniqueMember</b> will result in retrieval of all uniqueMembers from a groupOfUniqueNames
LDAP Member is DN	Defines whether member attribute retrieved using LDAP Member Attribute is full DN (y/n)

LDAP Admin User DN of the entry to use to bind to the LDAP server for user creation. While authentication works without binding as a privileged DN, creation of an entry usually does not. This admin DN is only used when creating user entries on the LDAP server (i.e. only if the option **Create user if not in Auth** is checked). Authentication works without an admin DN (Pear::Auth will try to bind using the username/password to authenticate).

LDAP Admin Pwd Password for the above DN.

---

The **LDAP Group** and **LDAP Member** settings are currently not used by Tiki (as of 1.9.2).

---

## Users Management

# Users Management

### General

Users management is done only by the admin of the TikiWiki. Users can either be added by the admin or they can register themselves from the homepage. When some users register themselves, they receive an email with a confirmation link. This concludes their registration. They automatically become members of the default group "Registered" and are entitled to all the rights that you have given to this group. For more information see the [groups management page](#).

### Adding a new user

After you have installed the software and logged in as the admin you will see the *Menu* on the left side. One of the items is *Admin*.

: insert image here

To manage users of your TikiWiki, click on the plus sign (+) on the right of *Admin* (it can be changed for "::<" or a folder image displayed on the left later). This will cause the *Admin* submenu to fold out.

: insert image here

In this submenu you will see the item for *Users*. Click on this and the users management module starts. It shows the form for adding a user and a list of current users with their relevant information.

: insert image here

Enter the name of a new user, that (s)he is going to use on your system, in the User

field. Be sure to use only a combination of A..Z, a..z, 0-9. Other characters in the username may be problematic.

You can either create a password for the new user or have the system generate one for you by clicking on the Generate a password link. When you generate a password, copy it in both of the password fields. The repeat password field is there to make sure that you entered the password that you intended and to ensure that you can login with that password.

Fill in the email address and finish the registration with a click on the Add button.

The new user will receive an email that will ask for confirmation of the registration by clicking on a URL that is in the confirmation email. When the user clicks on the link (s)he is registered and automatically logged in.

### **Adding new users in bulk**

You can upload a list of users from a file. The file needs to be in a CSV format. The first line will contain the list of field names. The fields are login, password, email and groups. The next lines have a user per line.

Example:

```
login,password,email,groups
dupont,passe,dupont@mail.com,'Editors,GroupX'
durant,passe,durant@mail.com
```

```
"email","login","password"
"user1@mail.com","mister user1", "passwith,"
```

These groups must exist.

### **Finding a user**

In the user management module there is a field where you can enter the name of a user that you want to find. The name you enter doesn't need to be exactly like the name you want to find. It is for instance not case sensitive. To search on part of a name is also supported. Searching on 'an' finds all the users with 'an' somewhere in their username.

### **Deleting a user**

To delete a user, click on the red cross behind the users name. You are asked to confirm the deletion, go back to the user management module or return to the homepage. After confirmation the user is deleted.



## Modifying existing user information

Configuration

Groups management

## Thanks to

Thanks goes to Sridhar for his very nice TikiMovie on users management.

---

## Groups Management

# Groups Management

---

## Permissions Settings

# Permission Settings

- [Permission Settings](#)
- [User Administration](#)
  - [Assigning users to groups](#)
- [Group Administration](#)
  - [Assigning permissions to groups](#)
  - [Including groups in groups](#)
- [Permission Names and Descriptions](#)
  - [General permissions](#)
  - [Wiki permissions](#)
  - [File galleries permissions](#)
  - [Comment permissions](#)
  - [Blog permissions](#)
  - [Image gallery permissions](#)
  - [Forums permissions](#)
  - [Communications permissions](#)
  - [Games permissions](#)
  - [Quiz permissions](#)
  - [Articles & Submissions permissions](#)
  - [FAQ permissions](#)
  - [User permissions](#)
  - [Chat permissions](#)
  - [Content template permissions](#)



- [Shout box permissions](#)
- [Drawing permissions](#)
- [HTML page permissions](#)
- [Tracker permissions](#)
- [Survey permissions](#)
- [Webmail permissions](#)
- [Newsletter permissions](#)
- [User message permissions](#)
- [DSNs](#)
- [Directory permissions](#)
- [Galaxia Workflow](#)
- [Charts](#)
- [ExtWikis](#)
- [Live Support](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [Permissions for individual users](#)
- [Individual permissions](#)

## Admin Documentation

The most important part of Tiki administration is understanding the permission system used by Tiki. Basically the rules are:

- Administrators can create and edit groups.
- Users can be assigned to one or several groups.
- Permissions are assigned to groups, NOT users.

There are two pre-defined groups:

- Anonymous: Users that are not logged automatically belong to the anonymous group.
- Registered group: Users logged in automatically belong to this group.

Tiki has the option to allow users to register themselves using the application or not, so registered users can or can't be trusted depending on that setting.

Note: When changing permissions you must refresh the page to see the updated permission list.

# User Administration

`/tiki-adminusers.php`

The user administration screen allows you to administer users. You can create new users (useful if users can't register themselves), remove users and assign groups to

a particular user. You can find users by login name using the find button at the top of the listing (it will act as a filter).



### Assigning users to groups

Create a group, for example *test*, and create a user, for example *foo*. Then from the user administration screen click permissions **key** for the user. You will be able to assign groups to that particular user. A user can belong to as many groups as you want.

To remove a user from a group, click the **x** to the right of the group name.

## Group Administration

/tiki-adingroups.php

You can create groups, delete groups, find groups by name/description, and you can assign permissions to a particular group by clicking permissions **key** in the row of the group. Note that by default the Registered and Anonymous groups are predefined.

Make sure you click **Add new group** when you want to create a new group. The interface is deceptive, you may in fact just be editing the same group over and over again if you have already selected a group.



To remove a permission from a group, click the **x** next to the permission name.

### Assigning permissions to groups

From the group administration screen click on permissions **key** for a particular group and you will see a screen divided in two parts. The top part shows information about the group and assigned permissions while the lower part can be used to manage permissions per category.



In the top section you can see information for the group that you selected as name, description and permissions assigned.

Then you can create a new permission level and you can if you want assign all the permissions in some level to the group. Or remove all the permissions in some level from this group. As you can see permissions are organized in levels. By default Tiki comes with four prearranged levels that you can modify as you want:

- Basic: permissions for anonymous users, basic site usage
- Registered: permissions for logged users
- Editor: Permissions to site editors can manipulate content.
- Admin: Permissions for admins only. Can be dangerous if missused

In the second part of the screen you can assign permissions and change levels.



The top section is used to select a permission category, for example games, forums, faqs, etc. All can be used to see all the permissions at once (the screen will be VERY long). For each category for which permissions will be displayed the checkboxes indicate if the permission is assigned to the group or not. You can assign/remove permissions using the checkboxes; you can also change the level of any permission using the dropdown. In this way you can re-classify the permissions as you need and then easily assign all level-x permissions to a group whenever you want.

When a user belongs to more than one group the permissions are accumulated

### **Including groups in groups**

When you create a group you can indicate that the new group includes other groups. If you do so then the new group will "inherit" the permissions from included groups (but they won't be displayed) so you can extend a group by including it and adding some permissions.

You can have a hierarchy of groups where descendant groups always inherit their parents' permissions. Sites with a structure similar to  
Anonymous -> Registered -> Paid -> VIP

Or something like that can use this feature to quickly define the group's permissions.

Note that only permission settings are inherited, not the group references. E.g. If Group A includes Group B, than Group A will have the same default permissions as Group B, but Group A members will no have access to objects that have individual permissions for only Group B.

# Permission Names and Descriptions

Permissions are what groups CAN do. Note that permissions always ALLOW groups to do things; there are no restrictive permissions in Tiki because they can conflict if the user belongs to more than one group. The list of permissions that you can assign to groups are:

## General permissions

tiki_p_admin	Administrator, can manage users groups and permissions and all the weblog features
tiki_p_use_HTML	Can use HTML in pages
tiki_p_edit_templates	Can edit site templates
tiki_p_admin_dynamic	Can admin the dynamic content system
tiki_p_admin_banners	Administrator, can admin banners
tiki_p_admin_categories	Can admin categories
tiki_p_vote_poll	Can vote polls
tiki_p_edit_cookies	Can admin cookies
tiki_p_view_stats	Can view site stats
tiki_p_view_referer_stats	Can view referer stats
tiki_p_eph_admin	Can admin ephemerides
tiki_p_admin_mailin	Can admin mail-in accounts
tiki_p_edit_languages	Can edit translations and create new languages
tiki_p_admin_banning	Can ban users or ips
tiki_p_create_css	Can create new css suffixed with -user

## Wiki permissions

tiki_p_edit	Can edit pages
tiki_p_view	Can view page/pages
tiki_p_remove	Can remove
tiki_p_rollback	Can rollback pages
tiki_p_admin_wiki	Can admin the wiki
tiki_p_wiki_attach_files	Can attach files to wiki pages
tiki_p_wiki_admin_attachments	Can admin attachments to wiki pages
tiki_p_wiki_view_attachments	Can view wiki attachments and download
tiki_p_upload_picture	Can upload pictures to wiki pages
tiki_p_minor	Can save as minor edit
tiki_p_rename	Can rename pages
tiki_p_lock	Can lock pages
tiki_p_edit_structures	Can create and edit structures
tiki_p_edit_copyrights	Can edit copyright notices

## File galleries permissions

tiki_p_admin_file_galleries	Can admin file galleries
tiki_p_create_file_galleries	Can create file galleries

tiki_p_upload_files	Can upload files
tiki_p_download_files	Can download files
tiki_p_view_file_gallery	Can view file galleries
tiki_p_batch_upload_files	Can upload zip files with files

### Comment permissions

tiki_p_post_comments	Can post new comments
tiki_p_read_comments	Can read comments
tiki_p_remove_comments	Can delete comments
tiki_p_vote_comments	Can vote comments
tiki_p_edit_comments	Can edit all comments

### Blog permissions

tiki_p_create_blogs	Can create a blog
tiki_p_blog_post	Can post to a blog
tiki_p_blog_admin	Can admin blogs
tiki_p_read_blog	Can read blogs

### Image gallery permissions

tiki_p_admin_galleries	Can admin Image Galleries
tiki_p_create_galleries	Can create image galleries
tiki_p_upload_images	Can upload images
tiki_p_view_image_gallery	Can view image galleries
tiki_p_batch_upload_images	Can upload zip files with images

### Forums permissions

tiki_p_admin_forum	Can admin forums
tiki_p_forum_post	Can post in forums
tiki_p_forum_post_topic	Can start threads in forums
tiki_p_forum_read	Can read forums
tiki_p_forum_vote	Can vote comments in forums
tiki_p_forums_report	Can report msgs to moderator
tiki_p_forum_attach	Can attach to forum posts
tiki_p_forum_autoapp	Auto approve forum posts

### Communications permissions

tiki_p_send_pages	Can send pages to other sites
tiki_p_sendme_pages	Can send pages to this site
tiki_p_admin_received_pages	Can admin received pages
tiki_p_send_articles	Can send articles to other sites
tiki_p_sendme_articles	Can send articles to this site
tiki_p_admin_received_articles	Can admin received articles

## Games permissions

tiki\_p\_play\_games     Can play games  
tiki\_p\_admin\_games     Can admin games

## Quiz permissions

tiki\_p\_admin\_quizzes     Can admin quizzes  
tiki\_p\_take\_quiz     Can take quizzes  
tiki\_p\_view\_quiz\_stats     Can view quiz stats  
tiki\_p\_view\_user\_results     Can view user quiz results

## Articles & Submissions permissions

tiki\_p\_edit\_article     Can edit articles  
tiki\_p\_remove\_article     Can remove articles  
tiki\_p\_read\_article     Can read articles  
tiki\_p\_submit\_article     Can submit articles  
tiki\_p\_edit\_submission     Can edit submissions  
tiki\_p\_remove\_submission     Can remove submissions  
tiki\_p\_approve\_submission     Can approve submissions  
tiki\_p\_admin\_cms     Can admin the cms  
tiki\_p\_autoapprove\_submission     Submitted articles automatically approved

## FAQ permissions

tiki\_p\_admin\_faqs     Can admin faqs  
tiki\_p\_view\_faqs     Can view faqs  
tiki\_p\_suggest\_faq     Can suggest faq questions

## User permissions

tiki\_p\_create\_bookmarks     Can create user bookmarksche user bookmarks  
tiki\_p\_configure\_modules     Can configure modules  
tiki\_p\_cache\_bookmarks     Can cache user bookmarks  
tiki\_p\_usermenu     Can create items in personal menu  
tiki\_p\_minical     Can use the mini event calendar  
tiki\_p\_userfiles     Can upload personal files  
tiki\_p\_tasks     Can use tasks  
tiki\_p\_notepad     Can use the notepad  
tiki\_p\_newsreader     Can use the newsreader

## Chat permissions

tiki\_p\_admin\_chat     Administrator, can create channels remove channels etc

tiki\_p\_chat      Can use the chat system

## Content template permissions

tiki\_p\_edit\_content\_templates    templates Can edit content templates  
tiki\_p\_use\_content\_templates    templates Can use content templates

## Shout box permissions

tiki\_p\_view\_shoutbox      Can view shoutbox  
tiki\_p\_admin\_shoutbox    Can admin shoutbox (Edit/remove msgs)  
tiki\_p\_post\_shoutbox      Can post messages in shoutbox

## Drawing permissions

tiki\_p\_admin\_drawings    Can admin drawings  
tiki\_p\_edit\_drawings      Can edit drawings

## HTML page permissions

tiki\_p\_view\_html\_pages    pages Can view HTML pages  
tiki\_p\_edit\_html\_pages    pages Can edit HTML pages

## Tracker permissions

tiki\_p\_modify\_tracker\_items    Can change tracker items  
tiki\_p\_comment\_tracker\_items    Can insert comments for tracker items  
tiki\_p\_create\_tracker\_items    Can create new items for trackers  
tiki\_p\_admin\_trackers          Can admin trackers  
tiki\_p\_view\_trackers          Can view trackers  
tiki\_p\_attach\_trackers        Can attach files to tracker items

## Survey permissions

tiki\_p\_admin\_surveys      Can admin surveys  
tiki\_p\_take\_survey        Can take surveys  
tiki\_p\_view\_survey\_stats    Can view survey stats

## Webmail permissions

tiki\_p\_use\_webmail      Can use webmail

## Newsletter permissions

tiki_p_admin_newsletters	Can admin newsletters
tiki_p_subscribe_newsletters	Can subscribe to newsletters
tiki_p_subscribe_email	Can subscribe any email to newsletters

## User message permissions

tiki_p_messages	Can use the messaging system
tiki_p_broadcast	Can broadcast messages to groups
tiki_p_broadcast_all	Can broadcast messages to all user

## DSNs

Permissions are created dynamically. See the [Wiki SQL plugin?](#) for information

## Directory permissions

tiki_p_admin_directory	Can admin the directory
tiki_p_view_directory	Can use the directory
tiki_p_admin_directory_cats	Can admin directory categories
tiki_p_admin_directory_sites	Can admin directory sites
tiki_p_submit_link	Can submit sites to the directory
tiki_p_autosubmit_link	Submitted links are valid
tiki_p_validate_links	Can validate submitted links

## Galaxia Workflow

tiki_p_admin_workflow	Can admin workflow processes
tiki_p_abort_instance	Can abort a process instance
tiki_p_use_workflow	Can execute workflow activities
tiki_p_exception_instance	Can declare an instance as exception
tiki_p_send_instance	Can send instances after completion

## Charts

tiki_p_admin_charts	Can admin charts
tiki_p_view_chart	Can view charts
tiki_p_vote_chart	Can vote
tiki_p_suggest_chart_item	charts Can suggest items
tiki_p_autoval_chart_suggestio	Autovalidate suggestions

## ExtWikis

missing permissions here



## Live Support

tiki_p_live_support_admin	Admin live support system
tiki_p_live_support	Can use live support system

## Calendar

tiki_p_view_calendar	Can browse the calendar
tiki_p_change_events	Can change events in the calendar
tiki_p_add_events	Can add events in the calendar
tiki_p_admin_calendar	Can create/admin calendars

# Permissions for individual users

What if you want to give a specific user some permissions? Just create an artificial group, assign the user to that group and give the group the permissions that you need.

## Individual permissions

As we explained you can set up individual permissions for some Tiki objects. When assigning individual permissions the permissions you can assign are the same as you have in the global permissions screen. Once an object has individual permissions only the individual permissions apply to the object, and not the global permissions.

The following objects accept individual permissions:

- Wiki pages
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- Forums
- Weblogs
- Newsletters
- Surveys
- Quizzes
- Trackers

---

## Admin DSN

# Admin DSN

---

## Backups

# Backups

---

## Banning

# Banning

This feature allows you to limit who can access what features based on the IP address of the computer they use.

It is handy to block wiki spammers if your site has registered or anonymous editing permissions.

Once activated, you can access the **Banning** admin page under the **Admin** menu

---

## Cache

# Cache

---

## Content Templates

# Content Templates

Content templates are texts that can be applied as templates when creating different tiki options, you can use templates when:

- Editing wiki pages
- Editing articles or submissions
- Editing HTML pages

To edit content templates follow the "content templates" link from the admin section of the application menu. The screen will be as follows:

The process is simple edit the template and save it, you can preview the template if you want.

Important: If editing an HTML page template the wiki syntax is OFF and features such as wiki references and others are not parsed. For HTML pages only HTML code and {ed id=name} or {ted id=name} are allowed and parsed when previewing.

Once a template is created you will be able to apply the template when editin an

object for the template type. Note that applying a template replaces ALL the text at the textarea so first apply the template and then fill it in.

## Cookies

# Cookies

## Contents

- [Cookies](#)
  - [Contents](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
  - [From Here](#)

::

## TikiWiki Content Management Features (Overview)

<i>Feature</i>	<i>Typical Application</i>
<a href="#">Articles</a>	Fast-breaking news, announcements
<a href="#">Blogs</a>	Online diaries or journals
<a href="#">Charts</a>	Like polls, but more feature-rich; displayed in center column
<a href="#">Cookies</a>	Taglines drawn randomly from tagline database
<a href="#">Directory</a>	User-submitted Web links
<a href="#">Ephemerides</a>	Content that varies by date
<a href="#">FAQs</a>	Frequently asked questions and answers
<a href="#">File Galleries</a>	Computer files and software for downloading
<a href="#">Forums</a>	Online discussion on a variety of topics
<a href="#">HTML Pages</a>	Static and dynamic HTML content
<a href="#">Image Galleries</a>	Collections of graphic images for viewing or downloading
<a href="#">Maps</a>	Navigable, interactive maps with user-selectable layers
<a href="#">Newsletters</a>	Content mailed to registered users
<a href="#">Polls</a>	Brief list of votable options; appears in module (left or right column)
<a href="#">Quizzes</a>	Timed questionnaire with recorded scores
<a href="#">RSS Feeds</a>	Newsfeeds from external Web sites
<a href="#">Surveys</a>	Questionnaire
<a href="#">Trackers</a>	Facts and figures storage & retrieval
<a href="#">Wiki</a>	Collaboratively authored documents

::

## Feature Overview

## From Here



Useful Links

---

**Edit Templates**

## Edit Templates

---

**External Wikis**

## External Wikis

---

**Import phwiki**

## Import phwiki

---

**Featured Links**

## Featured Links

The featured links section manages links. You can enter as many links as you want and a user module displays the links in the order that you want. Clicking the links will open the site in a frame inside the central section of Tiki. Statistics are kept about the number of times that featured links are visited and you can automatically order featured links by the number of hits they have.

The featured links admin panel screen lets you enter links that will be displayed in the featured links module.

You can access the screen to admin the featured links by following the 'links' link from the admin menu. Or copy and paste this on the tail end of your site's URL:

tiki-admin\_links.php

***insert graphic***

In this screen you can enter links, remove or edit existing links and set the position for each link in the featured links modules. Links with position = 0 won't be

displayed, so you can use that number to temporarily disable a link without removing it from the listing.

You can select the opening type for each link that can be:

- Replace current window (a normal link)
- New window (a normal link opened in a new window)
- Framed (The page will be opened as an iframe inside the Tiki window)

You will also have an option to automatically generate the positions for featured links using the number of hits (visits) which each link has.

---

### Mail notifications

# Mail notifications

---

### Mail-in

# The Wiki mail-in feature

The wiki mail-in feature can be used to setup email accounts that can be used to read and/or write (create and/or modify) Wiki pages and create articles (Tiki1.9). As admin click on the **Mail-in** link in the **Admin** section of the application menu to get to the mail-in admin section :

## Mail-in accounts

[add new Account]	Account	type
[edit   delete]	mailin@domain.org	wiki

### Edit/Add new mail account

Account name	<input type="text"/>		
POP server	<input type="text"/>	Port	<input type="text" value="110"/>
SMTP server	<input type="text"/>	Port	<input type="text" value="25"/>
SMTP requires authentication	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>		
Username	<input type="text"/>		
Password	<input type="password"/>		
Type	<input type="text" value="wiki-get"/>		
Active	Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/>		
Allow anonymous acces	Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/>		
Allow attachments	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>		
<input type="button" value="add"/>			

### Check Mail-in accounts

Check automatically	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>		
Frequency	<input type="text" value="10"/>	mn	
<input type="button" value="set"/>			

The Mail-in admin page

### Edit/Add new mail account

In this screen you can set-up mail accounts indicating the POP3 server, the SMTP server and the user-password to be used, it's like any normal email configuration tool with the adition that you can indicate the type of mail account to set-up. There is four types of accounts:

- **wiki-get**  
When an email is sent to the account indicating in the subject the name of a Wiki page Tiki will answer the email sending the wiki page to the sender.
- **wiki-put**  
When an email is received indicating the name of a wiki page in the subject the body of the email will be used to overwrite the wiki page indicated.
- **wiki-append**  
When an email is received indicating the name of a wiki page in the subject of

- the email the wiki page is appended with the data in the body of the email.
- **wiki-prepend**  
the same than `wiki_append`, but the message is added at the top of the page
  - **wiki**  
Wiki accounts can be used to GET, PUT and APPEND wiki pages, the body of the email is the page content, the subject is used to indicate what to do.
    - GET:*pagename*
    - PUT:*pagename*
    - APPEND:*pagename*
    - PREPEND:*pagename*
  - **article-put**  
When an email is received an article will be created with the message subject as article article and message body as article heading. The topic and type of the article can be specified at the mail-in account configuration.

## Other parameters

- **Active**  
Says whether the account is to be checked or not.
- **Allow anonymous access**  
Says whether anonymous users (regarding of their email address) can use this feature or not. If this parameter is set to 'No', and a user sends a mail to a mail-in account from an adress that is not in TikiWiki users list, Then the system will send a mail to this user saying that he can not use this feature.
- **Allow attachments**  
Says whether mail attachments are to be added or not.
- **Check automatically**  
If this parameter is set to 'yes' the system will automatically check all active mail-in accounts according to the 'Frequency' parameter.
- **(Tiki 1.10) Discard to the end from**  
The end of the message (for a put, append, prepend) will be deleted after the string you give

---

## Maps Config

On this page you configure the following:

full path to mapfiles:	the location where are the .map files on this server
default mapfile:	the map that is displayed by default when you click on maps on the application menu
Wiki Page for Help:	a wiki page to explain how the maps interface is working

Wiki Page for Comments:	a wiki page to put any type of comments
Full path to gdaltindex:	the path on this server of gdaltindex to allow the system to create a tiled shapefile of images
Full path to ogr2ogr:	the path on this server to the ogr2ogr binary to allow the system to create shapefiles containing user position (My Preferences) or image position (Image Galleries)
Map Zone:	select which zone in degrees you are working with

- Click on the button **change preferences** to update the above
  
  - Click on the button **Generate User Map** to create a shapefile containing the position of all the registered users who have indicated a latitude and longitude in their preferences.
- 

## Custom Menus

# Custom Menus

How to create a custom dynamic menu i.e. where sections of a menu items can be extended or collapsed within a parent section (folder).

In the Admin menu, select **Menus**, which takes you to **Admin menus** page (/tiki-admin\_menus.php).

Create a new menu, type **dynamic collapsed** or **dynamic extended**.

Once created, click the configuration button on this new menu's row, which will take you to /tiki-admin\_menu\_options.php?menuId=n

To create menu item fill-in the edit menu options form: at least **Name**, **URL**, **Type** = "option" and **Position** which is a number to set the menu item order. Save and look at the Preview of the menu.

To create a *section* i.e. a folder that can be opened or collapsed, fill-in the edit menu options form with at least **Name**, **URL**, **Type** = "section" and **Position**.

NOTE: Do not put anything in **Sections** unless you know the tiki specific feature references e.g. feature\_wiki or feature\_blog\_rankings. These can be auto-filled using **Some useful URLs** pull-downs.



Once the menu has all or most of the options go to "Admin Modules" page (/tiki-admin\_modules.php), under " Create new user module" at the bottom, find your menu title in the pull-down "Menus" on the right, click **use menu** and "{menu id=n}" (where n = your menu ID) will appear in the "Create new user module" data box. Add a title (what will users will see) and a name (what admin sees) and click **create/edit** .

Now you have created a new user module for the custom menu.

On Admin Modules you can assign the module using the "Assign new module" form.

---

### Theme Control

# Theme Control

---

### Phpinfo

# Phpinfo

---

### Admin Details

# Admin Details

---

### Action Log

(Tikiwiki >= 1.10)

This feature allows you to follow what a user is doing on a user basis or a category basis.

For instance, you want to know the time a user was active or how many actions (update, view, ... ) have been done by a user or by a category during a period of time.

# Configuration

This feature can be activated in the Admin -> Features panel.  
The actions that can be recorded can be selected in the Admin -> Action Log panel.  
For instance,

## Setting for recording and viewing actions

### Admin Action Log

### Setting

recorded	viewed	action	type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Created	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Removed	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Removed last version	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Removed version	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rollback	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Updated	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Viewed	wiki page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Posted	message
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Replied	message
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Viewed	message
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	*	login
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Uploaded	image gallery
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Viewed	image gallery
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Posted	forum
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Removed	forum
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Replied	forum
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Updated	forum
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Viewed	forum
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Uploaded	file gallery
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Viewed	file gallery
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	*	category

Wiki page actions except viewed will always be recorded but can be not reported

Some actions are always recorded as they are needed in other functions (the logging/logout time and the wiki page updated) . Some others can be recorded by activating them individually through this panel, plus it can be chosen which ones are needed for each report, regardless that there may be more actions being logged but not chosen to be displayed in the report.

# Report and Statistics

You can obtain a report and some statistics on a user/s, group/s and category basis. In the admin -> Action Log panel, you will find for instance

## Reporting filters

### Report

#### Filter

User:   
Start date: 06 November 2005

Group:   
End date: 06 November 2005

Category:

[See Statistics](#)

Two actions have special meanings. The category action will record at the same time the action on a object is done the current category(ies) the object has. And the logging action that is only a switch to display or not the login statistics.

Notice: if you change the configuration, the previous actions will not be changed. A new selected action (except for those that are always saved) will not show this type of action that have occurred in the past. If you take away an action, the recording and/or display will be updated accordingly from then onwards.

## List actions

Individual actions are listed:

## List – Group: a\_sima0506

user	date	action	type	object	category	+bytes	-bytes
JuditJaner	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[08:28 UTC]	Login	login				
JuditJaner	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[08:39 UTC]	Timeout	login				
XavierMedina	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[08:54 UTC]	Login	login				
XavierMedina	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[08:55 UTC]	Viewed	message				
XavierMedina	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[09:08 UTC]	Logout	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[09:29 UTC]	Login	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[10:22 UTC]	Timeout	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[10:31 UTC]	Login	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[10:41 UTC]	Replied	forum	<a href="#">SIMA05 - 7a setmana</a>	Sima0506	+1170	
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[10:49 UTC]	Timeout	login				
AliciaRuiz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[10:57 UTC]	Login	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:01 UTC]	Back	login				
AliciaRuiz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:04 UTC]	Updated	forum	<a href="#">SIMA05 - 7a setmana</a>	Sima0506	+110	-266
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:06 UTC]	Timeout	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:11 UTC]	Back	login				
PacoMuñoz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:16 UTC]	Timeout	login				
AliciaRuiz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:19 UTC]	Replied	forum	<a href="#">SIMA05 - 7a setmana</a>	Sima0506	+287	
AliciaRuiz	Sun 06 of Nov, 2005[11:26 UTC]	Timeout	login				

### Statistics

And some basic statistics are included below:

**Statistic – Group: Registered**

user	connection time	connection seconds	login
Xavier.dePedro	0 days 1 hours 57 mns	7028	1
JuditJaner	0 days 0 hours 10 mns	655	1
XavierMedina	0 days 0 hours 13 mns	823	1
PacoMuñoz	0 days 1 hours 28 mns	5294	3
AliciaRuiz	0 days 0 hours 29 mns	1758	1
AnnaEscardó	0 days 0 hours 17 mns	1033	2

category	message (+KB)	message (-KB)	message (KB)	forum (+KB)	forum (-KB)	forum (KB)
	2	0	2	0	0	0
Sima0506	0	0	0	6	0	6

user	Created wiki page	Removed wiki page	Removed last version wiki page	Removed version wiki page	Rollback wiki page	Updated wiki page	Viewed wiki page	Posted message	Replied message	Viewed message	Uploaded image gallery	Viewed image gallery	Posted forum	Removed forum	Replied forum	Updated forum	Viewed forum	Ug
AliciaRuiz	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
PacoMuñoz	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Xavier.dePedro	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	12	0	0	0
XavierMedina	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

category	Created wiki page	Removed wiki page	Removed last version wiki page	Removed version wiki page	Rollback wiki page	Updated wiki page	Viewed wiki page	Posted message	Replied message	Viewed message	Uploaded image gallery	Viewed image gallery	Posted forum	Removed forum	Replied forum	Updated forum	Viewed forum	Ug
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sima0506	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	14	1	0	0

category	user	Created wiki page	Removed wiki page	Removed last version wiki page	Removed version wiki page	Rollback wiki page	Updated wiki page	Viewed wiki page	Posted message	Replied message	Viewed message	Uploaded image gallery	Viewed image gallery	Posted forum	Removed forum	Replied forum	Updated forum	Viewed forum
Sima0506	AliciaRuiz	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
Sima0506	PacoMuñoz	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

[http://doc.tikiwiki.org/img/wiki\\_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/Admin\\_action\\_logs\\_statistics.png](http://doc.tikiwiki.org/img/wiki_up/doc.tikiwiki.org/Admin_action_logs_statistics.png)

**Internationalization**

TikiWiki supports many languages. The list and the status of the strings translations are updated on: <http://tikiwiki.org/TikiWikiInternationalizationAndLanguages>

☐.

The strings are the messages and the menu labels.

As an administrator, you can build a monolingual site other than an English one or a multilingual site.

As a user, you can view a multilingual site in you favorite language.

As of TikiWiki release 1.9 all language files can be added and removed using the Mods system. This means that you choose which languages are available on your site.

More documentation

[\*\*Internationalization Admin\*\*](#)

## Internationalization Admin

# Internationalization Admin

- Internationalization Admin
  - How to build a monolingual site?
  - How to build a multilingual site?
    - To configure a multilingual site:
    - To have a multilingual content:
    - Modules displayed only for some language
    - Multilingual user menu
    - Tip
  - Goodies
  - Installation trouble

## How to build a monolingual site?

By default TikiWiki is English/American. But Tiki supports many other languages. First, you must check if the Tiki strings (the menu texts, messages ...) have been translated in your language for your tiki release. The list and the status of the translations are updated on:

<http://tikiwiki.org/TikiWikiInternationalizationAndLanguages><sup>¶</sup>. You can also see them on you installation by looking in the admin/general panel the list of available language in "Language".

Then, you have to set up some information:

- In the admin/login panel, you have to uncheck "**Reg users can change language**"
- In the admin/features panel, you have to uncheck "**Multilingual**" and "**Best language**"
- In the admin/general panel, you have to set "**Language**" to your site language
- In the admin/general panel, you have to uncheck "**Detect browser language**"
- In the admin/general panel, you can set "**Default charset for sending mail**". Tiki default is utf8 but if the default for you language is iso-8859-1 and if you users use mail user agent that are not able to read utf8, it is better to set the charset to iso-8858-1. A registered user will always be able to reset this preference.
- In the admin/general panel, you have to set the **date formats**, if you want the language default, copy/paste from the language.php file.

Some tips:

- Tip: if you want to speed up you site, it is better to "compile" the templates. Go to the panel admin/system admin and click on "compile" of you language.
- Tip: if you want to save some space on disk, you can delete the directories lang/xx where xx is a language you don't use
- Tip: if you want to change some strings, you can edit the file lang/xx/language.php. But be careful, you must follow the syntax and you must use and save the file in utf8 encoding. To see your update in action, you must clear the cache tiki build automatically. To do that, go in the panel admin/system admin and click on the "Empty" of templates\_c line

It is possible to use the database to store the translated strings instead of the language.php file. See this page for more information

### How to build a multilingual site?

Tiki supports multiple languages, it means that the strings and messages can be displayed in a specific language chosen by the user or automatically chosen in function of the browser languages configuration.

The content of some objects (page, article) can also be displayed in the same language than the strings if the translations has been done and established.

#### To configure a multilingual site:

- In the admin/login panel, you have to define the list of languages you want. You have to check "**Reg users can change language**". You can restrict the available languages by setting "**Restrict available languages**"
- In the admin/general panel, you have to set the default **language** for the site, it is the language, the anonymous visitor of your site will see.
- In the admin/general panel, you can check or uncheck "**Detect browser language**". If it is set, the browser languages will override the site language for an anonymous visitor or for a user who didn't set his user language preference (in the MyTiki/preferences panel)
- In the admin/features panel, you have to check "**User Preferences Screen**"

#### To have a multilingual content:

- In the admin/features, you have to check "**Multilingual**". This will give the user the possibility to set the language of a Wiki page or an article and to build a set of translations (he would be able to say that this page/article is the translation of this page/article). Each user who has the right to edit a page/article can set the language and links it to the other translations.

The different languages for a Wiki page or article that has translations are shown in a **popup menu**, the page/article language first. A user can navigate through the different translations via this menu.

Establishing a set of translations will give Tiki the opportunity to automatically select in some case a Wiki page or an article in the **best language** for the user. The best language for a user is the first of the list:

1. page language for the articles plugin
2. user language (or current language)
3. contextual language (for a link in a tiki page it is the page language - not yet implemented)
4. browser languages
5. site language

For each language with a linguistic variant (ex: en-uk), the root language is added (ex: en) to the list (just after the variant)

Tiki will use the best language in some situations:

- In the Articles Home page and in the plugin Articles, if an article belongs to a set of translations only the article with the best language will be displayed.
- If the parameter `bl` or `best_lang` is given to `tiki-index.php` and if the page belongs to a set of translations, the page in the best language will be automatically displayed.
- If the feature "**Best language**" is set in the admin/features, a link to a wiki page from a wiki page will reach the page in the best language if this page is in a set of translations

The Best language feature is mainly used in an open multilingual site as tikiwiki.org. The pages are not translated in order. The translators don't have to change the links to the translated page. Their job is easier and it avoids to have a lot of bad links during a translation phase. For an operational multilingual site, the links must be adapted and the feature deactivated.

#### **Modules displayed only for some language**

If you want a module to be displayed only for some language, you have to set the parameter `lang` in the admin/modules/the\_module panel. The syntax is

- `lang=fr`
- `lang[]=en&lang[]=fr`
- `lang=fr&max=20`

The module will be displayed only if the current language is in `lang`



### Multilingual user menu

You can use the previous feature (module displayed only for a language) or you can use the translation process

- set your menu option name in admin-> menu in English
- set the user module title in the admin -> modules panel in English
- add in lang/your\_language/language.php, the list on translations

### Tip

If you want to speed up you site, it is better to "compile" the templates. Go to the panel admin/system admin and click on "compile" of each language.

### Goodies

Tiki also has some goodies that can help in a multilingual site:

- a module: `mod_switch_lang?` that enables a user or an anonymous to switch language.
- a wiki plugin `pluginVersions?` more generic can be used for language switch
- a wiki plugin `pluginLang?` to display a text only if the language matches
- a wiki plugin `pluginTranslated?` to display a link only if the language matches
- a smarty modifier `smartyTranslation?` to display a text only if the language matches
- in 1.10, you can add an additional parameter to the url `switchLang=<langName>`, where `langName` is the 2 language letters code (+ eventually - 2 country letters code). This parameter switches the language (for a logged user, it changes his preference - for an anonymous, it remembers the language in a session variable). Example: `tiki-index.php?page=Internationalization&swithchLang=fr`

### Installation trouble

[CharacterEncodingTrouble?](#)

---

### Tuning Tikiwiki

# Tuning Tikiwiki

---

## Design

See useful sections...

When designing your site, please consider using a user centered design approach to best satisfy the primary needs of your audience.

Recommended resources

- <http://usableweb.com> 

---

## Styles and Themes

- [How To Create a Custom Theme](#)
  - [Layout](#)
- [How to modify TPL files](#)
  - [Overriding templates](#)
  - [Presentation](#)
- [Allow User to Set Theme](#)
- [Using multiple Themes / Styles on your Tiki site](#)

# How To Create a Custom Theme

Tiki themes control both the layout or structure of a site *and* its overall look. You can alter the position of elements on your Web pages (adding/subtracting components) *and* you can modify stylistic elements like color and font. Thus, by creating or modifying a theme, you can define:

- The application layout (basic structure)
- The presentation of elements in the layout (style)

## Layout

Within Tiki, the terms *style* and *theme* are used pretty interchangeably.

First, you'll need to create the basic layout of your new theme.

1. Pick a name for the theme. Check the *templates/styles* directory to make sure

- there's not a pre-existing theme with the same name.
- For this example, we're going to create a theme called *screensite*.
2. Using your new theme name, create a sub-directory in the *templates/styles* directory.
    - For example, create *templates/styles/screensite*.
  3. Copy the files in a pre-existing theme's directory to your theme directory.
    - For example, copy the files from *templates/styles/moreneat* to *templates/styles/screensite*.
  4. Using the theme name you chose in the first step, create a .css file in the *styles* directory and copy the contents of the pre-existing theme's .css file into it.

At this point, your new theme has been created! If you go to **User Preferences** and check the drop-down menu for **Theme**, you'll find your theme listed (e.g., *screensite*). But, without changing the TPL files, your new theme will look just the same as the pre-existing theme you based it on.

## How to modify TPL files

The TPL files are written using the Smarty template language, which takes a little getting used to. See [smarty.php.net](http://smarty.php.net).

To modify the layout of Tiki in your theme, just edit the files you copied. You can add images, define columns, etc.

The specific template files will differ based on which pre-existing theme you choose, but some of the commonly used files are:

- *tiki.tpl*: the main template defining the layout of the whole application
- *error.tpl*: used to display errors
- *header.tpl*: the HTML header
- *tiki-top\_bar.tpl*: top navigation bar
- *tiki-bot\_bar.tpl*: bottom navigation bar
- the template files with names like *tiki-print.tpl* are used for printable representation of objects so you usually don't want to change them.

As you can see you can modify the layout of the whole tiki application by just changing one file.

### Overriding templates

As we saw above, the template files for custom themes all live in a directory named something like *templates/styles/custom\_theme\_name*--for example, *templates/styles/screensite*. The default template files live just one directory below there, in *templates* and its subdirectories, notably:

- *templates/mail*
- *templates/modules*

When creating a theme you can override any template file. You just need to put a modified template file in the directory *templates/styles/custom\_theme\_name*.

For example, if we wanted to modify the forum listing in our *screensite* theme, we'd just copy the file *tiki-forums.tpl* from

- *templates/tiki-forums.tpl*
- to
- *templates/styles/screensite/tiki-forums.tpl*

Then we'd edit our new copy of the file.

Tiki will substitute whatever is in your custom theme directory for the TPL files in the default directories.

This technique works on files in the subdirectories, too. E.g., to change the application menu in your theme, just copy the file *mod-application\_menu.tpl* from

- *templates/modules/mod-application\_menu.tpl*
- to
- *templates/styles/custom\_theme\_name/modules/mod-application\_menu.tpl*

## Presentation

The presentation of elements, the visual style of your theme, is created using CSS (Cascading Style Sheets). So, the next step in building a custom theme is to make a CSS file for it.

W3C provides tutorials and other tools for learning CSS principles:

[www.w3.org/Style/CSS](http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS) 

1. Pick an existing CSS file from the *styles* directory. Please note that the CSS files are **not** in the *templates* directory tree. In a default Tiki installation, there are *two* directories named *styles* under the Tiki root:
  - *styles* (for CSS files)
  - *templates/styles* (for the custom-theme sub-directories, into which you put TPL files--as we just did above)
2. Copy the CSS file, rename it to match your new theme name, and keep it in the *styles* directory with all the other CSS files. For example, we would call ours *screensite.css*.
3. Edit it to produce a style for your theme--selecting things like fonts, background colors and the behavior of hypertext links.

4. If you wish to add images to your CSS style, it's best to create a subdirectory for them beneath the *styles* directory--giving it your theme's name.
  - For example, *styles/screensite*

We recommend the use of *jalist.css* as a basic theme that you can use to start your new theme. If you want to make a very detailed theme use *subsilver.css* as the model.

Since you can change the CSS file and you can override any template your themes can make your Tiki site look like anything you want. The only limit is your imagination.

## Allow User to Set Theme

Under **Admin** > **Login** you can activate "**Reg users can change theme**".

Once activated users can change their theme in their Preferences page under **My Tiki** menu.

Under **Modules** you can also activate the **switch\_theme** module which makes it super easy for users to change themes.

## Using multiple Themes / Styles on your Tiki site

**ThemeControlDoc** on Tikiwiki.org is all about how to assign Themes to

- A tiki category
- A tiki section
- A tiki individual object (i.e. an individual Wiki page, Blog, Gallery, etc.)

If you enable the theme control center you will see a link to Theme Control in the Admin section of the application menu.

---

### Design rules

---

### Smarty Templates

Smarty is a "Template/Presentation Framework." It provides the programmer and

template designer with a wealth of tools to automate tasks commonly dealt with at the presentation layer of an application.

[Crash Course in Smarty](#) ▯

[Smarty Manual](#) ▯

# Smarty in TikiWiki

The default Smarty template files are in /templates.

If you want to modify a template, you should do so in a custom style directory, e.g. /templates/styles/custom\_theme\_name/

See [Styles and Themes](#) for more details.

## Tips

- use the `{literal} {/literal}` tag to escape Smarty parsing for a block of code, e.g. for a javascript
- `{* comment *}` is used for commenting in smarty

---

[Hacking Tikiwiki](#)

---

[Integrating another Application](#)

---

[Adding a new feature](#)

---

[Using Smarty Filters](#)

---

## Translating to a new language

### Creating the language

A new language is needed, we will take a real language that isn't included in the version 1.9.1 of tikiwiki:

**Indonesian, Bahasa Indonesia, (id)**.

It doesn't exist in the dropdown to use as the document language and therefore has to be included there at first, so that people can choose it as their translation.

#### Step 1

You have to have access to the filesystem on the server (i.e. FTP or shell-access)  
It is necessary to create a directory in the folder ***\$your\_site\_root/lang/*** you should call this folder with the appropriate two letter language code, in our case: **id**

#### Step 2

Now create a line in the array which you find in ***\$your\_site\_root/lang/langmapping.php*** in our example case we will go to insert it within the right order before the Italian language entry and after the Croatian:

```
[ . . . ]  
'hr' => array( 'Hrvatski', tra("Croatian") ),  
'id' => array( 'Bahasa Indonesia', tra("Indonesian") ),  
'it' => array( 'Italiano', tra("Italian") ),  
[ . . . ]
```

After doing these first two steps you might notice that this wasn't enough to make the new language appear on the dropdown menus etc. another step is required.

### Creating the translation for the interface.

**Can someone help me out here please!!!**

---

## ToolBox

---

### Linux tools

---

### Windows tools

---

## wBlogger

# wBlogger

---

---

## Java Tools

---

---

## Eclipse

---

---

## Annexes

# Annexes

---

---

## Collaborative Documentation

# Collaborative documentation

The work on tikiwiki documentation has been a one-man, long effort until the version 1.6 that was a really good documentation of 350 fully illustrated pages with screenshots and everything needed. And then we made tikiwiki.org and decided to eat our own dogfood.

### A large pool of knowledge

We now have more than 1100 wiki pages on <http://tikiwiki.org> with several pictures and miscellaneous useful content. But as it's wide open to collaboration it's also unsorted (or sorted in too many various different ways), chaotic and with an unpredictable degree of updating.

### A real need for structured documentation

Despite the joy and happiness tiki hackers demonstrate in the chaotic fertility on tikiwiki.org, there is a real need for a real classic linear documentation for easy reference. Many tiki contributors asked for a direction where they can help, and the fact is that such collaborative documentation work requires a strong focal point so people can work in effective synchronicity.



## A proposed plan

So after months of observation, of waiting and expectation, I got some time to throw down a basis that could be used so many hands could work on the same canvas. I prepared a structure from old documentation, with an exploration of possible adds from tikiwiki.org. The structure is not static and it will evolve, but will provide at least a good basis of work, with created pages that just need to be filled.

- **Overview**

These are a list of simple arbitrary standards that are convenient with respect to the length of the documentation, for reading consistency and understanding. The standards take into account the tikiwiki features at an optimal use, with a specified style. We are using TikiWiki 1.9 to write the documentation now, this gives us the ability to use the TikiWiki multi-language content features.

- **Examples**

The best way to learn is by copy-paste. The format seeds are dedicated pages that are declared as conforming to the writing standard and to the final expected result of documentation content. One seed is needed for each type of page, for now we have 2 of them: general topic and feature set.

- **Documentation Status**

This is the monitoring control center of command for the power of mastering the evolution of documentation ! More simply, it's a crude list of the pages from the documentation structure, with a quote on advancement or update status.

---

## Overview

# Documentation Standards Overview

If you want to contribute to the TikiWiki documentation effort, please respect the standards described here.

### Basic Concepts:

- **Page** In the TikiWiki documentation, the term *page* is synonymous with *Wiki page*.
- **Feature** A *feature* is a TikiWiki component that has a distinctive function, such as image galleries, file galleries, FAQs, banners, forums, or blogs (see **Features** for an overview).

## All of these pages are integrated by means of a Wiki structure

- **Standards**

for examples see [Examples](#)

Every page should follow uniform [Formatting Standards](#) that are applied in [Requirements and Setup](#) for example.

- **Status**

The [Documentation Status](#) is the hardcoded and commented version of the structure. If you add new pages, please add them with a visible indication **TO CREATE** so it can be added in structure. Cleaning and pages moving will occur frequently.

## Each feature requires AT LEAST four pages of documentation.

- **Main Page**

for example use [Blogs](#)

This is the top-level page for the feature. It defines the feature authoritatively, provides an overview of the feature's capabilities (which can be numerous, so they are described only briefly), and points the way to related internal or external resources.

- **User Help**

for example use [Blogs User](#)

This help is designed for end-users (including admins who use their sites). Each of the User pages should be organized by *tasks*, that is, what the user wants to accomplish (for example, "Creating a New Blog," "Preventing Other Users From Posting," etc.). Use screenshots liberally!

- **Admin Howto**

for example use [Blogs Config](#)

This How-To provides everything admins need to know in order to enable, configure, maintain, and troubleshoot the feature. Where needed, it should include system requirements information, or anything useful from admin point of view.

- **Reference**

for example use [Blogs Ref](#)

This is reference documentation. It should include lists with brief explanations of the following:

- permissions relevant to the feature,
- pertinent database tables,
- administrative configuration options,
- user options.

## Getting Started

- **Become an editor**  
Contact [mose](#) or [damian](#) to introduce yourself and get the editing permission you'll need (Editors group).
- **Choose some topic or feature**  
From the [Documentation Status](#) page, choose the feature you want to help document.
- **Find content**  
Ransack <http://tikiwiki.org> to see whether the feature is already documented there. If so, copy it and move the documentation here. Note that it won't be in the correct format! You can also lurk inside old 1.6 TikiWiki documentation <http://alt.thetinfoilhat.com/tiki-index.php?page=Tiki%20Documentation> to find maybe more information (but most have already been ported to tikiwiki.org).
- **Write what is missing**  
Write or revise the page so that it conforms to the relevant example as closely as possible (see [Examples](#) ). Check [Formatting Standards](#) to make sure you're handling mechanical matters such as headings, links, etc., correctly.
- **Work collaboratively**  
Update [Documentation Status](#) so that other contributors know what you're working on (and what still needs to be done).

---

## Formatting Standards

# Formatting Standards

Please read the following carefully before creating or editing TikiWiki documentation !

- **[Page Name](#)**
  - Capitalisation
  - Names
- **[Headings](#)**
  - Capitalisation
  - Line Spacing
  - Page Title
  - Major Headings
  - Minor Headings
- **[Emphasis](#)**
  - Bold
  - Italic

- Source Code
- **Links** ¶
  - No WikiWords
  - Wiki Page Names
  - External Links
  - Interwiki
- **Lists** ¶
  - Numbered Lists
  - Bulleted Lists
- **Graphics** ¶
  - Storage
  - Filenames
  - Tag
  - Format
- **Icons** ¶
  - When to use
  - Sample set
- **Footnotes** ¶
  - Collaborative Communication
  - Tw.o back InterLinks

In some words ...

- Do not use HTML.
- Don't hide URLs - the documentation will be available in printed form as well as online.
- Don't put messages to yourself or other writers (such as "help - is this complete?") within the page. Use the Footnotes area instead.
- Emulate the **Examples** !

...page...

## **Formatting Standards**

### **Page Names**

#### **Capitalisation**

Page names should be Camel+Case for all significant words. Basically, names should generally match headings as long as the heading is fairly short.

**Wrong** ImageGalleries

**Wrong** TikiProject

**Right** Image Galleries

**Right** Tiki Project

**Right** PHPLayers Features

**Right** Adding a New User

### Page Name

Generally major features use the following page name convention:

- \* Overview / Introduction: ((Feature))
- \*\* For users / general usage help: ((Feature User))
- \*\* For administrators: ((Feature Config)) and ((Feature Admin))
- \*\* For developers: ((Feature Ref))

**Wrong** ImageGalleriesUser  
**Wrong** ImageGalleriesRef  
**Wrong** Using Image Galleries  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Usage  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Introduction  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Overview  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Administration  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Configuration  
**Wrong** Image Galleries Reference

### Headings

#### Capitalisation

In titles, capitalise all nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, and first and last words. Don't capitalise articles (unless used as the first word), coordinate conjunctions, and prepositions. Do not add dots in titles as they are not sentences but labels. Separate the heading tag (!) from the first letter of the heading for easy double-click word select and fast visual source reading.

**Wrong** !Adding a new user  
**Right** ! Adding a New User

#### Line Spacing

Except for the page title, leave a blank line BEFORE a heading or subheading but don't leave a blank line AFTER.

! Adding a New User  
!!Fill the form

**Wrong** Fill and click.  
  
!!Check the perms  
Go to admin panel.

! Adding a New User

!! Fill the Form  
**Right** Fill and click.

!! Check Perms  
Go to admin panel.

### Page Title

At the top of the page, type ! followed by a decent title for the Wiki page you're editing. That can be different than the wiki pagename to provide more information, but only in some case, and generally a title identical to pagename is better.

### Major Headings

Type !! followed by the major heading text

### Minor Headings

Type !!! followed by the minor heading text

Don't use more than these three levels (page title, major heading, minor heading). Remember that heading objects are useful for maketoc tag, and for accessibility conformance too.

...page...

## Formatting Standards

### Emphasis

#### Bold

Use bold sparingly. You can use bold to provide a subject heading for items in bulleted lists (like those in this page). You must use bold to refer to text that appears on-screen, such as the name of a configuration option. Example: "In **Blogs**, click **Use WYSIWYG Editor** to edit your post in an easy-to-use, "what-you-see-is-what-you-get" formatting window."

#### Italic

Use Italic for indicating personal point of view, quoting, citation, or comments.

#### Source Code

Pieces of code source, either, html, smarty, php, javascript or any other require the use of CODE plugin for proper escaping and design. Try to separate code clearly from literal content, on a separate line when possible, like if it was an illustration.

...page...

## Formatting Standards

### Links

Remember, the documentation will be printed. Don't hide Wiki page links or URLs!

### No WikiWords

Whether you're naming a new page or referring to one, don't use WikiWords. To link to a Wiki page, spell and capitalize the page name correctly and enclose the name within double parentheses.

example, ((Formatting Standards)) ).

### Wiki Page Names

Don't hide page names with label text. Wrong: "Read the ((Formatting Standards | rules)) !" Right: Read the rules, which you'll find in ((Formatting Standards)) .

### External Links: Position

Add relevant useful external links at the bottom of each page, using the `--Wiki Titlebar Style=-` . *Don't put them in the body of the page.* To list the links, use a bulleted (\*) list with a label on first line and one or many URLs beneath, one on each line; hide these using the list continuation code (+). For an example, see **Blogs**.

### External Links: Typing

Never obfuscate an external URL with descriptive text.

- **Wrong:**

For more information, see the  
[http://www.computer.org/author/style/capitals.htm|IEEE Style Guide].

- **Right:**

For more information, see the IEEE Style Guide, located at  
[http://www.computer.org/author/style/capitals.htm].

- **InterWiki Links** To link to external Wiki pages at tikiwiki.org, use the `tw:` prefix.

...page...

## Formatting Standards

## Lists

Whenever possible, use bulleted (\*) or numbered (#) lists.

### Numbered Lists

Always use a numbered list when you are describing a series of steps that must be followed in a certain sequence.

### Bulleted Lists

Use bulleted (\*) lists liberally!

...page...

## Formatting Standards



## Graphics

- **Storage** Use attached images rather than image gallery. To attach an image, use **Upload Picture** (an option that appears when you're editing a Wiki page).
- **Filenames** Name your picture with the name of the page, stripping spaces, indexed with the rank number in the page, like in WikiUser1.png, WikiUser2.png, etc .. for images in the page **Using Wiki Pages**
- **Tag** Include images with the Wiki {img} tag (not the HTML tag).
- **Border** To help differentiate the graphic from surrounding text, place the graphic in a box (here's how: `^{img}^`).
- **Size** Maximum width is 600 pixels.
- **Format** GIF is forbidden. True color (16 or 24 bit) PNG doesn't offer good compression on large image sizes. If the image is not an icon or simmilar in size please use JPG only.
- **Position** Place images after the related text (not before).
- **In-Text Reference** Within the text, always refer to the image (for example, "In the following illustration, note...").

...page...

## Formatting Standards

## Icons

- Only use icons is exceptionnal situation and always take in account that it maybe cannot be displayed for any reason, so marking a special content with icon should also be done with some formatting.
-  {picture file=img/icons/cool.gif} is used to indicate a Tip, an hint or a special quote.
-  {picture file=img/icons2/alert.gif} is used to indicate a warning.



...page...

## Formatting Standards

### Footnotes

- The Footnotes area supposed to be useful for collaborative communication. Since the content is visible only to an user who edited it, it's more useful only for your personal footnotes about the page. Do not use page content for asking a question or making a remark to collaborators! Use comments area instead. This will make the job of final text cleanup much easier.
- When you transfer pages from tikiwiki.org, add a link to the doc page to the moved page, and add a link to the old page in the doc page. That will help housecleaning, too.
- Always indicate the inter-wiki link to the related tikiwiki.org pages.

---

### Examples

# Examples

If you're allergic to reading lots of rules about how to document TikiWiki (and who isn't?), use these pages as templates for your work — copy one of them, and plug in the information relevant to the feature you're documenting.

There are two general types of pages:

- Topic Pages
- Feature Pages

### Topic Pages

These pages introduce a section of the document. Examples:

- [Requirements and Setup](#)
- [ImageMagick Install](#)

### Feature Pages

These pages (taken together) fully document a feature:

- **Blogs**
    - **Blogs User**
    - **Blogs Config**
    - **Blogs Ref**
- 

The source for this page is:

`!Examples`

If you're allergic to reading lots of rules about how to document TikiWiki (and who isn't?), use these pages as templates for your work -- copy one of them, and plug in the information relevant to the feature you're documenting.

There are two general types of pages:

- \* Topic Pages
- \* Feature Pages

`!!Topic Pages`

These pages introduce a section of the document. Examples:

- \* `((Requirements and Setup))`
- \* `((ImageMagick Install))`

`!!Feature Pages`

These pages (taken together) fully document a feature:

- \* `((Blogs))`
  - \*\* `((Blogs User))`
  - \*\* `((Blogs Config))`
  - \*\* `((Blogs Ref))`
- 

## Documentation Status

# Documentation Status

1 <b><u>Introduction</u></b>	transferred	mose	to review
1.1 <b><u>Goals</u></b>	transferred	mose	to review
1.2 <b><u>Collaborative Documentation</u></b>	written	mose	validated
1.2.1 <b><u>Overview</u></b>	written	bryan	to review — made more simple - mose
1.2.2 <b><u>Formatting Standards</u></b>	written	bryan	to review — looks good
1.2.3 <b><u>Examples</u></b>	written	bryan	to review — looks good, will evolve
1.2.4 <b><u>Documentation Status</u></b>	prepared	more	live !

<b>2 Installation</b>	just a toc ?		
<b>2.1 Requirements and Setup</b>	edited	ang	to review
<b>2.2 Download</b>	done	mose	to review
<b>2.3 Linux</b>	done	mose	to review
<b>2.3.1 Install with RPM</b>			
<b>2.3.2 Install from Source</b>			
<b>2.3.3 Install on Debian</b>	created	Gerald	to do
<b>2.4 Windows</b>	updated	mose/Chealer9	to review
<b>2.5 Advanced Settings</b>	toc	ang	to review
<b>2.5.1 Shared Hosting</b>			
<b>2.5.2 Lite install</b>			
<b>2.5.3 MultiTiki</b>	done	ggeller	to review
<b>2.5.4 Rewrite Rules</b>	underway	damian	
<b>2.5.5 ImageMagick Install</b>	transferred	mose	<b>Seed</b>
<b>2.5.6 GraphViz Install</b>	transferred	ang	to review
<b>2.6 TroubleShooting</b>			
<b>3 Configuration</b>			
<b>3.1 Quick Start</b>	created	ang	<b>Seed</b>
<b>3.2 Using profiles</b>			
<b>3.3 Advanced Configuration</b>			
<b>4 Features</b>	created	bryan	structure done but many links w/o target
<b>4.1 Wiki</b>	underway	bryan	quite complete
<b>4.1.1 Using Wiki Pages</b>	underway	StarRider	
<b>4.1.1.1 Wiki Page Editor</b>	underway	StarRider	
<b>4.1.1.2 Wiki-Syntax Text</b>	underway	StarRider	
<b>4.1.1.3 Wiki-Syntax Separators</b>	underway	StarRider	
<b>4.1.1.4 Wiki-Syntax Special Characters</b>	underway	StarRider	
<b>4.1.1.5 Wiki-Syntax Lists</b>	transferred	mose	to review - added 2 headings StarRider
<b>4.1.1.6 Wiki-Syntax Links</b>			
<b>4.1.1.7 Wiki-Syntax Images</b>	underway	StarRider	
<i>... add more pages here ! ...</i>			
<i>...These pages belong in a different section</i>			
<b>???.? Directory Images Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img-Avatars Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img-Custom Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img-Flags Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img-Icn Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review
<b>???.? Directory Img-Icons Files</b>	Done	StarRider	to Review

???	<a href="#">Directory Img-Icons2 Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Img-MyTiki Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Img-Smiles Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Img-Tiki Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Img-WebMail Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Lib-Adodb Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Lib-Galaxia Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Lib-jHotDraw Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">Directory Lib-TikiHelp Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	<a href="#">JavaScript Files</a>	Done	StarRider	to Review
???	Delete Me & 2?	OOPs	StarRider	delete or rename
4.2	<a href="#">Tiki Config</a>	transferred from <a href="#">TikiAdminSettings</a>	mdavey	images missing, not in structures/categories; <b>live</b>
4.2	<a href="#">Admin Panels</a>			
4.2.1	<a href="#">Features Admin</a>	transferred from <a href="#">FeatureSettings</a>	mdavey	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.2.2	<a href="#">General Admin</a>	transferred	mdavey	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.2.3	<a href="#">Login Config</a>	transferred from <a href="#">UserRegistrationSettings</a>	mdavey	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.2.4.2	<a href="#">Wiki Config</a>	Done	Chealer9	to Review; <b>live</b>
4.2.4.3	<a href="#">Wiki Details</a>			
4.2.5	<a href="#">Image Galleries</a>	written/transferred, awaiting review and validation	rcogley	to review and validate
4.2.5.1	<a href="#">Image Galleries User</a>	transferred, edited, images uploaded, awaiting review and validation	rcogley	to review and validate
4.2.5.2	<a href="#">Image Galleries Config</a>	transferred, edited, images uploaded, awaiting review and validation	rcogley	to review and validate; <b>live</b>
4.2.5.3	<a href="#">Image Galleries Details</a>	completed, as far as I can	rcogley	needs someone who understand tiki internals to look at "related files" etc
4.3	<a href="#">Articles</a>	copied	jahlewis	in progress
4.3.1	<a href="#">Articles User</a>	copied	jahlewis	to review
4.3.2	<a href="#">Articles Config</a>	transferred from <a href="#">ArticleSettings</a>	magius	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.3.3	<a href="#">Articles Details</a>			
4.4	<a href="#">Blogs</a>	written	bryan	<b>Example</b>
4.4.1	<a href="#">Blogs User</a>	written	bryan	<b>Example</b>
4.4.2	<a href="#">Blogs Config</a>	transferred from <a href="#">BlogSettings</a>	mose	<b>Example</b> - but misses modules' usage; <b>live</b>
4.4.3	<a href="#">Blogs Ref</a>	transferred	mose	<b>Example</b>
4.5	<a href="#">File Galleries</a>			
4.5.1	<a href="#">File Galleries User</a>	migrated from <a href="#">FileGalleryDoc</a>	xavi	review
4.5.2	<a href="#">File Galleries Config</a>	needs merge	magius	needs merge; <b>live</b>
4.5.3	<a href="#">File Galleries Details</a>			
4.6	<a href="#">Forums</a>	transferred the first bit and image from <a href="#">ForumDoc</a>	xavidp	<b>please check</b> if this was appropriate source (my first contrib. to English documentation!!! :-)
4.6.1	<a href="#">Forums User</a>	transferred from <a href="#">ForumDoc</a>	xavidp	<b>please check</b> if this was appropriate source (my first contrib. to English documentation!!! :-)

4.6.2 <a href="#">Forums Admin</a>	transferred from <a href="#">ForumSettings</a>	mdavey	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.6.3 <a href="#">Forums Details</a>			
4.7 <a href="#">Directory</a>			
4.7.1 <a href="#">Directory User</a>			
4.7.2 <a href="#">Directory Admin</a>	needs merge		needs merge; <b>live</b>
4.7.3 <a href="#">Directory Details</a>			
4.8 <a href="#">FAQs</a>			
4.8.1 <a href="#">FAQs User</a>			
4.8.2 <a href="#">FAQs Admin</a>	transferred from <a href="#">FAQsSettings</a>	mdavey	images missing; <b>live</b>
4.8.3 <a href="#">FAQs Details</a>			
4.9 <a href="#">Quizzes</a>			
4.9.1 <a href="#">Quizzes User</a>			
4.9.2 <a href="#">Quizzes Admin</a>			
4.9.3 <a href="#">Quizzes Details</a>			
4.10 <a href="#">Trackers</a>	done	rcogley	pls review
4.10.1 <a href="#">Trackers User</a>	done	rcogley	pls review
4.10.2 <a href="#">Trackers Admin</a>	migrated <a href="#">Trackers with mirror tables</a> and need to be translated to english	rcogley, xavi	pls review; <b>live</b> original loc: tw:TrackerSettings
4.10.3 <a href="#">Trackers Details</a>	in progress	rcogley	
4.? <a href="#">Jukebox ?</a>			
4.?.1 <a href="#">Jukebox Config ?</a>			; <b>live</b>
4.? <a href="#">User Files</a>			
4.?.1 <a href="#">User Files Config ?</a>			; <b>live</b>
4.11 <a href="#">Surveys</a>			
4.11.1 <a href="#">Surveys User</a>			
4.11.2 <a href="#">Surveys Admin</a>			
4.11.3 <a href="#">Surveys Details</a>			
4.12 <a href="#">Newsletters</a>			
4.12.1 <a href="#">Newsletters User</a>	migrated from <a href="#">NewslettersDoc</a>	<a href="#">xavi</a>	missing images
4.12.2 <a href="#">Newsletters Admin</a>	Marc Laporte put some notes on NewsletterDev about 1.8 changes if this can helps <i>Chealer9</i> + xavi added some migrated content from <a href="#">NewslettersDoc</a>		
4.12.3 <a href="#">Newsletters Details</a>			
4.13 <a href="#">Ephemerides</a>			
4.13.1 <a href="#">Ephemerides User</a>	migrated text from <a href="#">NewslettersDoc</a>	xavi	missing images
4.13.2 <a href="#">Ephemerides Admin</a>			
4.13.3 <a href="#">Ephemerides Details</a>			
4.14 <a href="#">Charts</a>			
4.14.1 <a href="#">Charts User</a>			
4.14.2 <a href="#">Charts Admin</a>			
4.14.3 <a href="#">Charts Details</a>			
4.15 <a href="#">Stats</a>			
4.15.1 <a href="#">Stats User</a>			
4.15.2 <a href="#">Stats Admin</a>			
4.15.3 <a href="#">Stats Details</a>			
4.16 <a href="#">Games</a>			
4.16.1 <a href="#">Games User</a>			
4.16.2 <a href="#">Games Admin</a>			
4.16.3 <a href="#">Games Details</a>			
4.17 <a href="#">Calendar</a>			
4.17.1 <a href="#">Callendar Config ?</a>			

4.17.2	<a href="#">Calendar User</a>			
4.17.3	<a href="#">Calendar Admin</a>	created	jcwinnie	to review; live
4.17.4	<a href="#">Calendar Details</a>			
4.18	<a href="#">Workflow</a>			
4.18.1	<a href="#">Workflow User</a>			
4.18.2	<a href="#">Workflow Admin</a>			
4.18.3	<a href="#">Workflow Details</a>			
4.19	<a href="#">Integrator</a>			
4.19.1	<a href="#">Integrator User</a>			
4.19.2	<a href="#">Integrator Admin</a>			
4.19.3	<a href="#">Integrator Details</a>			
4.20	<a href="#">Categories</a>			
4.20.1	<a href="#">Categories User</a>			
4.20.2	<a href="#">Categories Admin</a>			
4.20.3	<a href="#">Categories Details</a>	Done for 1.10	Chealer9	
4.21	<a href="#">Banners</a>			
4.21.1	<a href="#">Banners User</a>			
4.21.2	<a href="#">Banners Admin</a>			
4.21.3	<a href="#">Banners Details</a>			
4.22	<a href="#">Modules</a>			
4.22.1	<a href="#">Modules User</a>			
4.22.2	<a href="#">Modules Admin</a>			First this will require the separation of user content from admin content on tw.o's UserModuleAdmin and UserModuleDoc. Then it can be transferred here and updated to 1.8 using UserAssignedModules, which should then be deleted from tw.o <i>Chealer9</i>
4.22.3	<a href="#">Modules Details</a>			
4.23	<a href="#">Chat</a>			
4.23.1	<a href="#">Chat User</a>			
4.23.2	<a href="#">Chat Admin</a>			
4.23.3	<a href="#">Chat Details</a>			
4.24	<a href="#">Live Support</a>			
4.24.1	<a href="#">Live Support User</a>			
4.24.2	<a href="#">Live Support Admin</a>			
4.24.3	<a href="#">Live Support Details</a>			
4.25	<a href="#">Maps</a>			
4.25.1	<a href="#">Maps User</a>			
4.25.2	<a href="#">Maps Admin</a>	in progress?	Franck, mose	to review; live
4.25.3	<a href="#">Maps Details</a>			
4.26	<a href="#">Tikibot</a>			
4.26.1	<a href="#">Tikibot User</a>			
4.26.2	<a href="#">Tikibot Admin</a>			
4.26.3	<a href="#">Tikibot Details</a>			
4.27	<a href="#">Voice Tiki</a>			
4.27.1	<a href="#">Voice Tiki User</a>			
4.27.2	<a href="#">Voice Tiki Admin</a>			
4.27.3	<a href="#">Voice Tiki Details</a>			

---

4.28	<a href="#"><u>Mobile Tiki</u></a>			
4.28.1	<a href="#"><u>Mobile Tiki User</u></a>			
4.28.2	<a href="#"><u>Mobile Tiki Admin</u></a>			
4.28.3	<a href="#"><u>Mobile Tiki Details</u></a>			
4.29	<a href="#"><u>Structures</u></a>	Done	chris.holman	To Review
4.29.1	<a href="#"><u>Structures User</u></a>	Done	chris.holman	To Review
4.29.2	<a href="#"><u>Structures Admin</u></a>			
4.29.3	<a href="#"><u>Structures Details</u></a>			
4.30	<a href="#"><u>Comments</u></a>			
4.30.1	<a href="#"><u>Comments User</u></a>			
4.30.2	<a href="#"><u>Comments Admin</u></a>			
4.30.3	<a href="#"><u>Comments Details</u></a>			
4.31	<a href="#"><u>Copyright Management</u></a>			
4.31.1	<a href="#"><u>Copyright Management User</u></a>			
4.31.2	<a href="#"><u>Copyright Management Admin</u></a>			
4.31.3	<a href="#"><u>Copyright Management Details</u></a>			
4.32	<a href="#"><u>Communications Center</u></a>			
4.32.1	<a href="#"><u>Communications Center User</u></a>			
4.32.2	<a href="#"><u>Communications Center Admin</u></a>			
4.32.3	<a href="#"><u>Communications Center Details</u></a>			
4.33	<a href="#"><u>Spellchecking</u></a>			
4.33.1	<a href="#"><u>Spellchecking User</u></a>			
4.33.2	<a href="#"><u>Spellchecking Admin</u></a>			
4.33.3	<a href="#"><u>Spellchecking Details</u></a>			
4.34	<a href="#"><u>Drawings</u></a>	interested	van_woods	not yet started
4.34.1	<a href="#"><u>Drawings User</u></a>	interested	van_woods	not yet started
4.34.2	<a href="#"><u>Drawings Admin</u></a>	interested	van_woods	not yet started
4.34.3	<a href="#"><u>Drawings Details</u></a>	interested	van_woods	not yet started
4.35	<a href="#"><u>HTML Pages</u></a>			
4.35.1	<a href="#"><u>HTML Pages User</u></a>			
4.35.2	<a href="#"><u>HTML Pages Admin</u></a>			
4.35.3	<a href="#"><u>HTML Pages Details</u></a>			
4.36	<a href="#"><u>Dynamic Content</u></a>			
4.36.1	<a href="#"><u>Dynamic Content User</u></a>			

4.36.2 <a href="#"><u>Dynamic Content Admin</u></a>				
4.36.3 <a href="#"><u>Dynamic Content Details</u></a>				
4.? <a href="#"><u>Webmail</u></a>				
4.?.1 <a href="#"><u>Webmail User?</u></a>				
4.?.2 <a href="#"><u>Webmail Admin?</u></a>				; live
4.?.3 <a href="#"><u>Webmail Details?</u></a>				
4.37 <a href="#"><u>Polls</u></a>				
4.37.1 <a href="#"><u>Polls User</u></a>				
4.37.2 <a href="#"><u>Polls Admin</u></a>	transferred from <a href="#"><u>PollSettings</u></a>	jbutler		; live
4.37.3 <a href="#"><u>Polls Details</u></a>				
4.38 <a href="#"><u>RSS Feeds</u></a>				
4.38.1 <a href="#"><u>RSS Feeds User</u></a>				
4.38.2 <a href="#"><u>RSS Admin</u></a>	transferred from <a href="#"><u>RssFeedSettings</u></a>	mdavey		images missing, do not rename page; live
4.38.3 <a href="#"><u>RSS Feeds Details</u></a>				
4.39 <a href="#"><u>Shoutbox</u></a>				
4.39.1 <a href="#"><u>Shoutbox User</u></a>				
4.39.2 <a href="#"><u>Shoutbox Admin</u></a>				
4.39.3 <a href="#"><u>Shoutbox Details</u></a>				
4.40 <a href="#"><u>Search</u></a>				
4.40.1 <a href="#"><u>Search User</u></a>				
4.40.2 <a href="#"><u>Search Admin</u></a>	created	jasondiceman		Seed ; live
4.40.3 <a href="#"><u>Search Details</u></a>				
4.?? <a href="#"><u>Score?</u></a>				
4.??.1 <a href="#"><u>Score Config?</u></a>				; live
4.?? <a href="#"><u>Meta Tags?</u></a>				
4.40.2 <a href="#"><u>Metatags Config?</u></a>				; live
4.?? <a href="#"><u>Project?</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Projects?</u></a>				
4.??.2 <a href="#"><u>Projects Config?</u></a>				; live
4.?? <a href="#"><u>Community?</u></a>				
4.40.2 <a href="#"><u>Community Config?</u></a>				; live
4.?? <a href="#"><u>Site Identity?</u></a> <a href="#"><u>Site Logo and Identity?</u></a>				
4.??.2 <a href="#"><u>Site Identity Config?</u></a>				; live
4.41 <a href="#"><u>MyTiki</u></a>				
4.41.1 <a href="#"><u>MyTiki Admin</u></a>				
4.41.2 <a href="#"><u>MyTiki Details</u></a>				
4.41.3 <a href="#"><u>Webmail</u></a>				
4.41.4 <a href="#"><u>Inter-User Messages</u></a>				
4.41.5 <a href="#"><u>User Notepad</u></a>				
4.41.6 <a href="#"><u>User Tasks</u></a>	migrated from <a href="#"><u>UserTasksDoc</u></a>	xavi		to review
4.41.7 <a href="#"><u>User Files</u></a>				
4.41.8 <a href="#"><u>User Calendar</u></a>				
4.41.9 <a href="#"><u>User Menus</u></a>				
4.41.10 <a href="#"><u>User Preferences</u></a>				
4.41.11 <a href="#"><u>User Bookmarks</u></a>				



4.41.12	<a href="#"><u>User Modules</u></a>			
4.41.13	<a href="#"><u>User Watches</u></a>			
4.41.14	<a href="#"><u>Newsreader</u></a>			
	* renumber			
4.42.4	<a href="#"><u>Users Management</u></a>	In Progress		nicolas
4.42.5	<a href="#"><u>Groups Management</u></a>	To Do		nicolas not yet started
4.42.6	<a href="#"><u>Permissions Settings</u></a>	in progress + added images from tw:: <a href="#"><u>PermissionAdmin ?</u></a>		mose, jasondiceman, xavi
4.42.7	<a href="#"><u>Admin DSN</u></a>			
4.42.8	<a href="#"><u>Backups</u></a>			
4.42.9	<a href="#"><u>Banning</u></a>			
4.42.10	<a href="#"><u>Cache</u></a>			
4.42.11	<a href="#"><u>Content Templates</u></a>			
4.42.12	<a href="#"><u>Cookies</u></a>			
4.42.13	<a href="#"><u>Edit Templates</u></a>			
4.42.14	<a href="#"><u>External Wikis</u></a>			
4.42.15	<a href="#"><u>Import phpwiki</u></a>			
4.42.16	<a href="#"><u>Featured Links</u></a>	migrated from <a href="#"><u>FeaturedLinks</u></a> and <a href="#"><u>FeaturedLinksAdmin</u></a>	xavi	images missing, plus review any other person
4.42.17	<a href="#"><u>Mail notifications</u></a>			
4.42.18	<a href="#"><u>Mail-in</u></a>	done	bburgaud	to review
4.42.19	<a href="#"><u>Custom Menus</u></a>			
4.42.20	<a href="#"><u>Theme Control</u></a>			
4.42.21	<a href="#"><u>Phpinfo</u></a>			
4.42.22	<a href="#"><u>Admin Details</u></a>			
4.43	<a href="#"><u>Internationalization</u></a>	in progress		sylvie
5	<a href="#"><u>Tuning Tikiwiki</u></a>			
5.1	<a href="#"><u>Design</u></a>			
5.1.1	<a href="#"><u>Styles and Themes</u></a>			
5.1.2	<a href="#"><u>Design rules</u></a>			
5.1.3	<a href="#"><u>Smarty Templates</u></a>			
5.2	<a href="#"><u>Hacking Tikiwiki</u></a>			
5.2.1	<a href="#"><u>Integrating another Application</u></a>			
5.2.2	<a href="#"><u>Adding a new feature</u></a>			
5.2.3	<a href="#"><u>Using Smarty Filters</u></a>			
5.2.4	<a href="#"><u>Translating to a new language</u></a>			
5.3	<a href="#"><u>ToolBox</u></a>			
5.3.1	<a href="#"><u>Linux tools</u></a>			
5.3.2	<a href="#"><u>Windows tools</u></a>			
5.3.2.1	<a href="#"><u>wBloggar</u></a>			
5.3.3	<a href="#"><u>Java Tools</u></a>			
5.3.3.1	<a href="#"><u>Eclipse</u></a>			
6	<a href="#"><u>Annexes</u></a>			
6.1	<a href="#"><u>Third Party code</u></a>			
6.1.1	<a href="#"><u>Smarty</u></a>			
6.1.2	<a href="#"><u>Adodb</u></a>			

6.1.3	<a href="#">SmartIrc</a>			
6.1.4	<a href="#">Wollabot</a>			
6.1.5	<a href="#">Mapserver</a>			
6.1.6	<a href="#">SpellChecker</a>			
6.2	<a href="#">History</a>			
6.2.1	<a href="#">Changelog 1.6</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.2	<a href="#">Changelog 1.7</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.3	<a href="#">Changelog 1.5</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.4	<a href="#">Changelog 1.4</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.5	<a href="#">Changelog 1.3</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.6	<a href="#">Changelog 1.2</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.7	<a href="#">Changelog 1.1</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.2.8	<a href="#">Changelog 1.0</a>	transferred	mose	Valid
6.3	<a href="#">Copyrights</a>			
6.4	<a href="#">Tikiwiki Community</a>	copied	mose	test of copy from Community on tw.o, needs formatting in export filter

---

## Third Party code

---

### Smarty

---

### Adodb

---

### SmartIrc

---

### Wollabot

---

### Mapserver

The mapserver is an application that has been originally designed by the University of Minnesota, but is now maintained by many contributors. The university still holds the web site: <http://mapserver.gis.umn.edu/>.

Recently the mapserver has been exporting functions and methods to other languages. This extension is called Mapscript. Mapscript can be linked to perl, python, java and php.

TikiWiki can use the mapscript module to display and manage **maps** and become a Geospastial Content Management System (GeoCMS).

Geographic image galleries, user preferences (latitude/longitude) are some features that can take advantage of the **maps**

---

## SpellChecker

---

## History

---

## Changelog 1.9

---

## Changelog 1.8

---

## Changelog 1.7

# Changelog 1.7

This page will be the final place for the feature related content in **ReleaseProcess17**, summing up all relevant and interesting features additions hopefully.

Version 1.7 -Eta Carinae-

- FIX Added form to edit groups and change included groups
- NEW Added an Edit CSS feature, with fancy display of css and fast editor form
- NEW Added a setup\_virtual.sh for virtual hosting, and changed internal code accordingly
- NEW Added a general Calendar feature for tiki content browsing and groups calendar management. Uses overlib and some javascript enhancements.
- NEW Added a MODULE plugin to display modules inside wiki pages
- NEW Added copyrights management system.
- NEW Authentication: Tiki can use the Web Server authentication if admin wants, the user is automatically logged to Tiki once the Web Server authentication is used.
- NEW Mechanism to prevent script/robotic user registration is supported, Tiki

generates a graphical number that the user must enter in the registration form to be registered. This feature is optional and can be enabled/disabled from the admin->login menu.

- NEW New theme added: neat based on plone.
- NEW A single wiki-page can be a multi-page page using ... page ... to separate pages, individual pages can be viewed using navigation links or a slideshow.
- NEW A wiki structure can be created/imported from a text representation of the tree where structure levels are depicted by indenting the text with single spaces.
- NEW All pages in a structure can be exported from the admin structures page
- NEW A text representation of a Wiki structure can be exported then it can be used to create (recreate) the structure in another system.
- NEW Blogs: Blog posts now support multi-page posts, the first page will be displayed when listing blog posts (can be used as a heading) and the other pages are navigable when reading a blog post.
- NEW Articles: Multi-page articles are now supported, use ... page... to separate pages in a multi-page article. Navigation links to article pages automatically added.
- NEW Articles: The permission `tiki_p_autoapprove_submission` was added, groups with that permission can submit articles that are automatically approved.
- NEW Articles: The list of articles can be configured choosing which columns should be displayed when listing articles.
- NEW Wiki: Optionally admin can choose if the user who creates a page has admin privileges over that page (remove, assign perms, etc)
- NEW Wiki: The listpages feature can be configured choosing what columns will be displayed in the listing.
- NEW MyTiki page reformatted to a tabbed interface.
- FIX Lethal bug in tikilib that caused cache engine to infinitely recurse has been resolved.
- NEW Forums: Posts can be reported to moderator.
- NEW File galleries: Up to 6 files can be uploaded at once.
- NEW Forums control to view posts from the last X hours/days only.
- NEW File galleries dupes are now prevented.
- NEW File galleries improved, listings are configurable, files can be moved and deleted. Better interface. etc
- NEW Banning system: Admin can ban users or IPs from specific sections of Tiki, rules accept dates (suspensions). Usernames accept regexes, IPs accept wildcards example: `23.*.*`
- NEW Forums: Tiki distinguishes between read and unread posts
- NEW WML&PDA Integration using HawHaw: Use `tiki-wap.php` to access a Phone/PDA friendly version of the Wiki.
- NEW Forum attachments added, you can setup which forums admit attachments and who can attach files to forum posts.
- NEW Added forum discussion button to wiki page view: allows users to go straight to forum for page discussion.
- NEW Drawings history added. From the admin drawings panel you can view

- the history, remove versions, etc.
- NEW Drawings jGraphPad replaced jHotDraw, lot of new features and tools to edit drawings which can be included in any parsed tiki object.
  - NEW Forums: Breadcrumb added. Links to next/prev topic when browsing threads added.
  - NEW Forums: Topic summaries added and can be used (optional)
  - NEW Forums: Topic smileys can be used
  - NEW File galleries: you can edit the name/description of files (Joan)
  - NEW File galleries: duplicate uploads are prevented.
  - NEW Articles: topic or article image can 'float' around text optionally.
  - NEW Forums: columns to be listed in topic listing can be configured per-forum.
  - NEW Forums: columns to be listed in forum listing can be configured.
  - NEW Notes in notepad remember parsing mode.
  - NEW Notes in notepad can be viewed as smarty templates
  - NEW Forum posts can be saved to the notepad.
  - NEW Weblog posts can be saved to the notepad.
  - NEW Notepad: A note can be converted in a wiki page or update the content of any wiki page (if permitted)
  - NEW Notepad: notes can be merged into a single note.
  - NEW Weblogs: Trackback pings implemented, you can send a ping from any weblog post to any URI accepting trackback pings. Tiki will also accept trackback pings the tiki-view\_blog\_post.php script implements the discovery mechanism, then Tiki can display a list of trackback pings to your blog posts from other sites. Compatible with geeklog, movabletype and other wonderful weblogging packages that are-now-eclipsed-by-the-amazing-tiki-machine!
  - NEW Weblogs: interface added to add images to a weblog post, this works with the traditional editor or the brand-new WYSIWYG editor.
  - NEW Customizable heading (all the html before posts) for weblogs.
  - NEW You can control if individual weblogs accept comments
  - NEW Weblogs: blog posts can use titles if the blog is configured to use titles.
  - NEW Weblogs: admin can select what columns to list in the blog listing, the blog owner can be listed as an avatar, link or text. Improved the look and feel of the blog listing.
  - NEW WYSIWYG editor added for blog posts, you can now edit an HTML post for a blog using a full-featured Wysiwyg editor (IE only in 1.7)
  - NEW Workflow engine added. Create processes, monitor processes and execute processes. Processes are mapped to PHP scripts. Please read the workflow documentation for a detailed overview of the Workflow engine.
  - NEW The special Smarty plugin {helplink page="PageName"} can be used to create a link that will display a wiki page as a help popup. This allows your site to create an online help system based on Wiki pages.
  - NEW In file galleries, the file title and description now can be edited.
  - FIX In file galleries, when a file had a title the filename was showed instead. Now it shows title correctly, and title itself is not forced to be entered, the filename is shown when no file title has been provided.
  - NEW New popup window to see images in image galleries. It autosizes to the image's size.

- NEW Batch user import in Users administration. Now you can import users from a CSV file. The CSV file needs to have the column names in the first record. The column titles must match with fields in "users\_users" table. Login, password and mail are forced. If an unexistant field is specified, it's ignored.
  - NEW Default .htaccess contains many apache/mod\_rewrite commands:  
`http://ex.com/tiki-index.php?page=HomePage => http://ex.com/HomePage,`  
`http://ex.com/tiki-view_blog.php?blogId=1 => http://ex.com/blog/1,` etc.
- 

## Changelog 1.6

# Changelog 1.6

- Wiki structures added. You can organize wiki pages in structures and pages belonging to a structure will show a navigation bar to the next-prev page in the structure. A tag was added to display a table of contents for the current structure (in the first page of the structure for example)
- Directory added. A link directory was added, you can classify links in categories and let the user browser the categories or find links using a search engine. Users can suggest links that may need to be validated by an admin.
- Permissions levels added, you can set-up the level of each permission and then you can assign all level x permissions to a specific group. This can be used to quickly setup group permissions using packs of permissions around a level.
- Inter-user messages. Users of a Tiki site can send messages to other users and receive messages, privacy settings added as well as options to flag messages, mark them, reply, etc. Admin can broadcast messages to all the users in the site. A module to display new messages was added.
- Contact-us module. A module where the user can contact the admin using the ineternal messaging system (if enabled) or an email.
- Who's online module. A module diplsyng the names of the registered users that are online.
- Permissions interface improved. Permissions are now assigned/removed using checkboxes, you can now assign/remove many permissions in one post.
- Mail-In feature added for the Wiki. An email account can be configured to manipulate wiki pages. Several account types supported. Users can receive wiki pages by email, update pages by email or append text to wiki pages sending emails to the configured accounts.
- Remember-me feature added to the ligin box (if enabled) the lifetime of the cookie used to remember the user can be configured.
- New themes added: tcteti,elegant,whitebluegray,bluegreen and others
- You can now view the source of any version in the page history listing and remove many versions of a page using checkboxes.
- Inter-Wiki links were added admin can setup sites that can be used as external wikis and then the syntax ((WikiName:PageName)) can be used to link to external pages in other wikis.

- Optionally admin can implement user-level locks of pages, when activated users with permission to lock pages can lock pages and only the user who locked a page or an admin can unlock it. The user who locked the page is displayed as a tooltip of the locked page icon.
- Handlers can be defined by the user to run some custom PHP functions before parsing wiki pages or after parsing.
- A mini calendar was added users can enter events and view the calendar as a list of events, as a weekly calendar or as a daily calendar. Reminders can be used to notify the user before an event occurs. Calendars can be imported/exported to/from Outlook.
- A theme can now redefine any Tiki template, if a theme is found in templates/\$theme then that template is used, if not the template in templates/ is used.
- As an alternative Wiki table rows can now be separated by a new line instead of || making the table syntax more readable.
- Users can add personal items to the application menu, as an option toplevel bookmarks can be automatically added to the menu.
- User notepad added, users can write notes or upload notes, read them and download them.
- Newsreader added, users can read news from any NNTP site.
- New wiki plugins added see the Wiki plugins section in this manual for information.
- Wiki page footnotes added, a footnote can contain user-level comments about the page. The footnote is only displayed to the user that created it.
- Plugins are now re-entrant and recursive. Plugins can be nested and plugins can generate other plugins code or wiki markup code.
- Wiki structures can be used to generate slide shows.
- User tasks added, including a module that can be used to enter new tasks display active tasks and remove tasks or mark them as done.
- Theme control center added: when activated admin can make sections, categories or individual objects use a particular theme. Your site can then use multiple themes changing the look and feel of the site as the users navigate it.
- Performance increased by reducing the size of libraries and making the string translation phase a compile-level task.
- User files added, users can upload personal files and download them, admin can set up a quota for users.
- Ephemerides added, text/images can be entered for each day in the calendar and the users can browse them, a module to display today text/image if it exist is also provided.
- Many new minor features, improvements and enhancements were also added for this release.



## Changelog 1.5

# Changelog 1.5

- You can select the name of your Wiki home page. Can be other than HomePage.
- Now admin has an option to enable full wiki page names allowing spaces and accents and other characters to be part of a wiki page.
- Quick image uploads to wiki pages, you can upload a picture from the editpage feature and have it displayed in the page immediately.
- Added a phpinfo link to check your php installation in the admin menu.
- Now you can make batch uploads of zip files for file galleries. If you have the right permission just upload a zip file and all the files will be added to the gallery.
- Now you can use comments for individual blog posts.
- Tikilib code reduced splitting it into smaller libraries reducing memory consumption. (stage1)
- Added a description field for Wiki pages (optional) when this feature is disabled the description is displayed below the page name and as the title of a link to the page (form other pages).
- Added direct link to pages in paginations (optional) if enabled you can jump to any page of a multipage listing by following a link.
- Newsletters added, admins can setup newsletters and users can subscribe, emails are required to confirm subscriptions and prevent spamming. Then admin can simply send an HTML based newsletter to the subscribed (and confirmed) users. Users can unsubscribe using a URL.
- Added an option to generate gzipped output to the browser.
- Base templates can now be defined by theme so you can create a theme presenting a whole different layout for Tiki. You can also use this to create themes including images and other decoration elements in Tiki. Since only base templates are classified by theme you can do it changing just a few files. If you don't want to change the layout just copy the templates from the templates directory if you are creating a theme.
- Changed wiki page names to support up to 150 characters.
- Menus now preserve their state between pages (using cookies) if cookies are disabled then menus wont preserve state but will still work as they did before.
- Added plugins to the Wiki, now you can create your own plugins for the wiki to suit your needs. The syntax is simple, see lib/wiki\_plugins/example.php for a description and example.
- Admin can choose if passwords are stored in plaintext or not. If not, a hash will be used to authenticate users and the remind-password feature will generate a new password and send it by email. The new password will be immediately due so the user will be forced to change it.
- All the JavaScript code has been packed into a library.
- Tiki can now be run on any Web server port.
- HTTPS protocol is now supported. Tiki can now run over HTTPS connections.
- BiDi support. Added support for BiDi languages. Added BiDi.css file to control



- BiDi directionality and layout.
- Added ~ns~ ~/ns~ syntax to the Wiki to make page sections unparsed. Can be used to put HTML code or anything that you want as-is without wiki syntax being parsed.
  - Full text searching added (optional). By enabling this feature, results will be sorted by the relevance of the match to the search query. Also, search results will be ordered first by relevance, and then by section (wiki, blog, etc.). Non-fulltext searching continues to sort first by section, and then by 'hits'.
  - PHPWikiImport feature. You can export pages from a PHPWiki dump into tiki even versions will be created.
  - Export all wiki feature. As admin you can export the whole wiki as a text dump that can later be imported into this or another Tiki site.
  - Import/export wiki pages. Wiki pages can now be exported to a .txt Mimealike format and imported from an exported file.
  - Slideshows added, if a wiki page contains more than one ==titlebar== then you can display it as a slide show. This is a very cool feature.
  - Admin can select the minimum length for a password to be valid.
  - Admin can choose if user passwords must include letters and numbers to be valid.
  - Admin can setup passwords lifetime and Tiki will force the user to change his password once the password is expired.
  - Challenge-response authentication added, if enabled and the browser support JavaScript then user passwords are never send across the network being replaced by a challenge-response authentication algorithm. This improves security since the chance of password eavesdropping is reduced a lot.
  - Added sections to forums, now you can put forums into sections and the forums listing will list forums for each existing section. (As phpBB and other forum software does).
  - Improved forum layout to be nicer (Roger)
  - Avatars added to forums. Users can configure their avatars from their user preferences screen, pick an avatar from the library (more than 500) or upload an image to be used as your avatar.
  - Surveys, create surveys to get a better understanding on your users opinions, many survey question types, users can fill surveys and stats are stored.
  - Many bugs fixed, google module now works, definition lists fixed, wiki lists fixed, etc., etc.
  - Webmail, set-up as many POP-accounts as you want, select a "current" account and you will be able to read mails, write emails, delete emails, download attachments, use attachments, write or read HTML based emails. Manage your address book, automatically add addresses to your address book and all the regular cool webmail features.
  - Trackers, trackers are a flexible way to track user-requests and groupware tasks, you can define the fields for each tracker. Many field-types supported. Tracker items can be commented and can have file attachments, tracker items can be assigned to a user or group and will appear in the user preferences page (the user's home). Trackers and tracker items can be monitored and Tiki will send you an email when something is changed. You

can open-close tracker items.

- Dates and times are displayed in the time zone specified by the user and/or the administrator. The administrator (but not the user) can also specify the date and time format strings. Month and weekday names are also localized, if locales are configured correctly on the server.
- 

## Changelog 1.4

# Changelog 1.4

- Quizzes added, you can create quizzes with any number of multiple choice questions, you can assign points to each question and show an Quiz result to the user depending on his score. Quiz results can be stored and stats are kept about Quizzes. You can also indicate a time limit for each quiz and if the quiz can be repeated or not.
- HTML pages added, you can create and display static or dynamic HTML pages that can be used as subhomes, special sections, credits page, live scores for spots, stock values, live news coverage, etc. A very flexible addition and dynamic pages are very interesting.
- Now templates can be edited and applied to wiki pages, articles, submissions and HTML pages.
- Shout box screen and shout box module added a nice way for users to communicate and send shot messages to other users in the site.
- Now admin can choose to store files for file galleries on the database or a directory, using directory requires some extra configuration but may be more comfortable to handle large files.
- Optionally a passcode can be used to let user register into the system, this is useful for semi-public or private sites.
- You can now specify how featured links will open with three options: replace current browser window, open in a new window or open in a iframe inside the window.
- New syntax to underline text in wiki pages.
- New syntax to next lists in wiki pages you can use \*,\*\*,\*\*\*,#,##,### etc
- New {showdate} function available to display the current date in modules.
- New top games module.
- New syntax to display a random image from any gallery {gallery id=n} in modules.
- Now groups can include other groups inheriting the included groups permissions.
- New syntax for internal links in the wiki: ((page|description))
- New theme: jalist
- Now you can select individual layout per sections if you want for example to remove a column or a top bar only in the forums, faqs, etc.
- New since your last visit module showing new objects since the user last visit.
- You can now indicate the default ordering for weblogs in the weblog listing.

- You can use any URL as your home page so you can put any tiki section as the home page.
- Improved forums section showing more information for the last post in forums and forum topics.
- Now you can collect stats about search terms and as admin see the most searched terms in your site.
- Added a usage graph showing the activity for each section of your site (Wiki, Forums, etc).
- You can enable/disable the user ability to change the theme and language from the user preferences screen.
- You can add regular expressions to filter filenames for file uploads, you can do positive checks (filename must match regex) and negative checks (filename must not match regex).
- Added google search module.
- Added an option to prevent counting the admin page views for site stats.
- Modules can now accept parameters in the form of a URL query string (example `foo=1&bar=3`) this can be used to tweak the behavior of modules so you don't need a zillion different modules you can use only one with parameters for the same kind of task.
- Added raw navigation mode to the wiki. You can use `tiki-index_raw.php` instead of `tiki-index.php` to get a raw representation of the Wiki without columns bars and decorations this can be used to feed a program that automatically navigates wikis such as the Touchgraph wiki browser.
- Improved forums listing more information about the last post.
- New syntax for wiki table accepting colspanning `||r1c1|r1c1||r2c1c2||`
- Option added in the admin screen to prevent counting admin page views.
- Editable drawings can be included in Wiki pages, articles and blog posts using `{draw name=foo}`, a permission is needed to be able to edit\_drawings. Drawings are stored in a directory and identified by their name. The drawings are edited using a Java applet called jHotDraw. This feature can be disabled.
- Referrer stats, you can enable an option to store statistics about referrers to your site, a screen where the referrers are listed is provided to see the stats.
- Batch upload of Images. If you have the permission you can upload .zip files and all the images in the zip file are automatically added to the gallery.
- File attachments for wiki pages, with the right permissions you can upload files to wiki pages and a list of attached files will be displayed at the bottom of the wiki page and they can be downloaded.
- Now images for the image galleries can be stored optionally in a directory instead of the database, the same recommendations and tips about storing file uploads should be observed.
- Improved spellchecker, now the spellchecker suggest several options for miss-spelled words and you can choose the option that you prefer from the list.
- Icons are displayed for file extensions when listing files.
- You can enable/disable an option to display the page title for wiki pages.
- Improved menu builder.
- You can now choose if hotword links are opened in a new window.
- Reduced the number of queries that tiki makes when loading preferences, if

not changed preferences are loaded from a file now this is controlled automatically and you don't have to do anything.

- Integrated search feature you can now search for words on the entire site.
- 

### Changelog 1.3

# Changelog 1.3

- Spell checking, now you can spell check your articles, submissions, wiki\_pages and blog\_posts before saving them, the spell checking dictionary for your language must be downloaded and installed to make this work, dictionaries will be provided as simple .sql dumps and can be downloaded from SourceForge. In this edition the english dictionary is provided. (Read the documentation to learn how to install the dictionary). Spell checking can be enabled/disabled for Articles, Submissions, WikiPages and blogs from the admin screen.
- Orphan pages listing, list pages that are not linked from any other wiki page.
- RSS feeds for forums listing the last post to any forum in your site.
- RSS feed for individual forums listing the last posts to a given forum.
- New Diff routine taken from PHPWiki in the Wiki history for a page, now you can see the diff or compare two versions side-by-side as before.
- New syntax for colored text in the Wiki `~~#0000FF:text~~` to insert text using colors.
- Syntax to center text `::text::` will center the text.
- Relevance ranking for WikiPages based on a PageRanking algorithm.
- You can now send/receive articles from/to other Tiki sites from the communications center.
- You can now search deep into subcategories from the category browser.
- Added a tool to produce a printable version of multiple Wiki pages.
- Now you can preview comment postings in any "commentable" area or in the forums.
- BreadCrumb navigation module listing the last "n" pages that you visited.
- New feature: FAQs, create and edit faqs, list faqs, popular faqs module and last faqs module, search for text in faqs.
- Several fixes regarding "find" functions in listings.
- Find feature in the listing of Wiki pages.
- New syntax for WikiPages (`((any))`) can be used to create the "any" page, now page names are NOT limited to the CapitalizedWordsSmashedTogether rule.
- Syntax to prevent converting Smashed words into wiki names use: `)  
Someldea((`
- Now you can double-click on a wiki page to edit it (some browsers only).
- Filter added in the communication center to find specific objects to be sent.
- A tool to autogenerate passwords was added in the resgistration screen for lazy users.
- New feature: Backups, you can create backups of your entire Tiki base,

download backups to be saved in some safe place, upload a backup and restore backups. Backups are encrypted to prevent a user from stealing information from your site.

- New registration mode, now you can make Tiki validate users email address by sending them an email with a link to first-login in Tiki, once activated the user will login normally with his password. Of course this feature is optional and can be enabled/disabled from the Admin screen.
- QuickEdit module, where you can type the name of a WikiPage and quickly edit/create the page without finding a link to the page, this can create a lot of orphan pages but can also be very very helpful to people maintaining the Wiki to quickly create pages and edit them.
- Optionally Tiki can display a "I forgot my password link" for unregistered users to allow users that have forgotten their password to get it by email. You can enable/disable this feature from the Admin screen.
- User Bookmarks, users with the proper permission can create bookmarks and store them in folders, they can admin their bookmarks as they want, a cache is provided for user bookmarks. A user module to display bookmarks with an option to quick-add a Tiki page to the bookmarks is also included.
- Users with the right permission can configure the modules that will be displayed in the left/right columns and the order in which modules will appear. This can be used to let users configure their modules as they want, as an admin you must make all the modules that the users can configure available by default.
- Statistics, a page where you (or anyone with permission) can view a lot of statistics about the site including a graph showing the number of page views per day. Statistics can be enabled/disabled from the admin screen, please suggest new (useful) statistics that can be added in future versions.
- Fortune cookies (taglines), you can enter taglines or upload from a textfile, the syntax can be used to display a random cookie in articles, posts, wiki pages,etc or any template.
- Games section to play flash games, upload games or use the provided additional game-pack. You can upload new games, edit the descriptions and play.
- Added a new theme: dblue.
- Now the list of users in the current chat channel is displayed in the chatrooms.
- Now you can send private messages in the chatrooms using  
":username:message"
- Reviews added, now articles can be normal articles or reviews, for reviews the editor can rate whatever he is reviewing.
- Undo feature in the wiki, if a user can edit pages then he can undo what he edited pressing an undo button, users without permission to remove versions won't be able to undo what other users edited only his editions can be undone.
- Individual permissions for CMS topics added, you can now control who can read some topics, if the topic has no individual permissions then it will be displayed to all the groups. But if you want you can assign the tiki\_p\_read\_topic permission to some groups for a topic and only those groups



- will be able to read that topic.
  - A mini-popup window can be opened when editing objects to help the user insert special characters in the text, specially latin characters, accents, etc. This is taken from the horde project and submitted by Marc Laporte.
  - Tiki is now using Smarty 2.3.1 the last stable Smarty release.
- 

## Changelog 1.2

# Changelog 1.2

- Added a find feature to the lastchanges section in the Wiki (Ramiro).
- Added Categories: You can create categories and subcategories building a category tree, objects (pages, forums, blogs, image galleries, file galleries, etc) can be assigned to one/many categories, the user can browse categories finding objects for each specific category.
- Communications center: Now you can send/receive Wiki pages from/to other Tiki-enabled sites using a simple XMLRPC API, received pages are stored in an "ibox" where an admin can view,edit,remove,accept the pages. This new feature can be used to send a Tiki page from one site to another one!
- Consolidated CSS file, there're two CSS files in this distribution: subSilver and default2, if you wantto produce a new theme you can change any of these, subSilver is longer and uses an individual style for every element in Tiki while default2 applies the same style to multiple elements (ie: tables) and thus is a faster way to get a theme ready.
- Forums!, now you can set-up mesage forums, forums are organized by topics and topics by threads, users can post, reply and quote messages in forums, messages can be voted using the same karma system used in comments. Many features are "copied" from phpBB since it is the best forum software for PHP, we copied those features and integrated the forums with the Tiki permission system, rankings, modules and search engine.
- Now you can upload th thumbnail of an image when uploading an image, this will prevent automatic thumbnail generation. Some users wanted this feature because thumbnail generation didn't work or theywanted to upload their own thumbnails. Maybe you want to have a thumbnail that is not the same as the full image so you can use this feature. Thumbnails will be displayed using the size assigned for thumbnails to the image gallery.
- Now you can set up how old must a version be at least to be removed from the history, this can prevent a user from saving a page "n" times destroying a previous version. (Thanks to tesla2k for the tip)
- Links to help including objects in user modules where added to the admin\_modules screen.
- Next and prev buttons where added to view the next/prev image when browsing images from a gallery (Ramiro).
- Now you can control which groups can view image galleries and filegalleries.
- Individual permissions for image galleries, as an admin you can control which

- groups can view,admin, upload to a specific gallery overriding global permissions.
- Individual permissions for file galleries, as an admin you can control which groups can view,admin, upload and download to a specific gallery overriding global permissions.
  - Individual permissions can be set up by admins to weblogs, so you can control which groups can read, admin and post to specific weblogs.
  - From the page-permissions screen admins can set up email addresses that will receive an email when the page changes. If you want to remotely monitor some page this is for you.
  - Chatrooms feature (experimental), you can create chatrooms and the users can enter chatrooms and chat, the refreshing time for each chatroom can be configured and the page is not reloaded, only an invisible frame with size 0 is reloaded to get fresh chat messages.
  - RSS modules, create RSS modules to display news/events from other sites, you can display RSS feeds in user modules using {rss id=n}, you can set up which feeds can be displayed and the refreshing time for each feed. RSS 0.91 and 1.0 are supported.
  - Polls, you can create polls, set polls to be "active,closed,current". Polls can be displayed in modules using {poll id=n} or {poll} to select a random poll from the "current" polls. There's a page to view poll results and old poll results and old polls not closed can be voted. A mechanism to prevent a user from voting many times is also included.
  - Menu builder section, you can build menus using sections and options, menus can be static (no javascript) or dynamic. Menus can be displayed in user modules using {menu id=n}
  - Comments can now be filtered by threshold.
  - Comments for weblogs,articles, image galleries, file galleries and polls.
  - A selected file gallery can be used as the home page for the site.
  - Now you can enable/disable RSS feeds from the admin screen and limit the maximum number of items for any feed.
  - New RSS feed for individual file galleries listing the last images uploaded to a given gallery.
  - New RSS feed for individual image galleries listing the last images uploaded to a given gallery.
  - New RSS feed for weblogs listing last posts to any weblog.
  - New RSS feed for file galleries listing last files uploaded.
  - New RSS feed for image galleries listing last images uploaded.
  - Random pages module.
  - Now you can include dynamic content blocks in wiki pages using {content id=n} or {rcontent id=n}.
  - Now you can use {rcontent id=n} to select a random content from a dynamic block content, the syntax can also be used to select the last current content for a block.
  - New Wiki element: ^some^ will render "some" inside a simple box.
  - The layout can be configured from the admin screen you can enable/disable the columns, top bar and footer.

## Changelog 1.1

# Changelog 1.1

- The edit button now shows on red if someone may be editing the page, this helps preventing two users from editing the same page. This feature can be enabled/disabled from the admin menu.
  - Now HTML tags are filtered out from weblog posts except normal tags such as a,p,img,br,table,i,b,etc.
  - Link added to edit the page from the wiki pagelist.
  - Page generation time was added below the footer.
  - The featured links admin screen has been revamped, now featured links can be enabled/disabled and ordered as you want, an automatic ordering feature by link -hits was also added. Hits are now counted and displayed for featured links.
  - The titlebars in wikipages are now brown instead of the terrible blue ones.
  - File galleries, create galleries, add files to galleries, download files. Permissions configurable, rankings for file galleries and modules available.
  - Module names are now sorted in the admin modules screen.
  - Now you can see permissions according to categories when assigning permissions to groups, the assign permissions screen was revamped.
  - Wiki page comments, now you can activate/deactivate comments for wiki pages, comments can be voted and replied, configurable permissions and karma system for comment points(!)
  - Fixed minor layout problems and xhtml glitches.
  - Several bugfixes and minor improvements on the code.
- 
- 

## Changelog 1.0

# Changelog 1.0

- Added blogs to Tiki, users can create blogs, post entries in blogs, find entries, etc.
- The calendar can be now used to navigate blogs watching the posts for a given day.
- Added an XMLRPC interface compatible with blogger, users can use desktop applications such as blogbuddy or blogger to send posts to weblogs.
- Added a CMS system to Tiki, topics and articles can be edited and published or programmed to be published.
- Added submissions to Tiki, users can send submissions, admins can approve them and make them articles.
- Improved the search engine, now you can search in pages, galleries, images, blogs and/or articles, added pagination to the search results page.



- Added an option to select the home page of the application, it can be the Wiki HomePage, a blog, the articles homepage (listing last n articles) or an Image Gallery.
  - Make the main application menu expandable/collapsable per section.
  - Added banners (Beta version) admins can add banners classified in zones, a banner can be displayed in any template using a simple syntax (including user modules) banners can display HTML code, an image or text (text adds) a page with banner stats accessible by users (clients) is also available.
  - Templates can now be edited from Tiki.
  - Added a dynamic content system, this allows to edit blocks that can be included in any template or user module using a simple syntax. Blocks can be programmed for the future and are automatically changed by Tiki. This feature adds a lot of flexibility to the application.
- 

## Copyrights

---

### Tikiwiki Community

# Tikiwiki Community

Copypasted page from <http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-community.php> on Saturday 06 December, 2003

If you are not on that list and are member of the tikiwiki community, please contact an admin to be added.

Operation is manual for now, working on its automatisation ..

- Members of the community
  - registered on tikiwiki.org 2474,
  - dev on tikiwiki.org 118,
  - dev on sourceforge.net 153

albrown

Country: United\_States

Name: Al Brown

Url: <http://thetinfoilhat.com>

Registered on tw.o : Thu 03 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 15 Sep, 2003

ohertel

Country: Germany

Role: Developer, Translator de

Name: Oliver Hertel  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 03 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 22 Nov, 2003

zaufi  
Country: Russia  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 03 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

mose  
Country: France  
Role: misc technical lead and community support  
Name: mose  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 03 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

patvdv  
Country: Belgium  
Name: Patrick Van der Veken  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 04 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

marclaporte  
Country: Canada  
Name: Marc Laporte  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 04 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

Terence  
Country: United\_States  
Role: SpiderDog  
Name: Terence?  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 04 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 24 Oct, 2003

PrezKennedy  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 04 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 29 Oct, 2003

tex  
Country: Germany  
Name: Christoph Drieschner  
Url: <http://texorama.de>  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sun 24 Aug, 2003

DennisDaniels  
Country: United\_States  
Name: Dennis Daniels  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

gmuslera  
Country: Uruguay  
Name: Gustavo Muslera  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

MLimburg  
Country: Australia  
Name: Mark Limburg  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 20 Oct, 2003

redflo  
Country: Germany  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

sylvie  
Country: United\_States  
Name: sylvie greverend  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 06 Dec, 2003

Damian  
Country: United\_Kingdom  
Name: Damian Parker  
Url: <http://www.damosoft.co.uk>  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

jpg  
Country: Argentina  
Name: Juan Pablo Gim, nez  
Url: UserPagejpg  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 14 Oct, 2003

NorbertHuffschmid  
Country: Germany  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 05 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

ang

Country: Hungary

Registered on tw.o : Sun 06 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 02 Dec, 2003

DaveSanders

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Sun 06 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 20 Nov, 2003

rasa

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Sat 12 Jul, 2003

ricardo

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 25 Jul, 2003

tom

Country: France

Role: developer

Name: Tom Bouillut

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 28 Nov, 2003

dheltzel

Country: United\_States

Name: Dennis Heltzel

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

TonyColley

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 31 Oct, 2003

luis

Country: Argentina

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 25 Nov, 2003

van\_woods

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 03 Dec, 2003

mariana

Country: Argentina

Registered on tw.o : Mon 07 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 08 Jul, 2003

jahlewis

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Tue 08 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 21 Oct, 2003

freephile

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Tue 08 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 27 Oct, 2003

btallman

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Wed 09 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Sun 03 Aug, 2003

djamel

Country: France

Name: djamel

Registered on tw.o : Wed 09 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 26 Nov, 2003

chris.holman

Country: United\_Kingdom

Registered on tw.o : Thu 10 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 02 Dec, 2003

jjongsma

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Fri 11 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 01 Aug, 2003

einstine

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Fri 11 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Sat 25 Oct, 2003

loic

Country: France

Name: Loïc Monthorin

Registered on tw.o : Mon 14 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 29 Jul, 2003

paradime

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Mon 14 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 08 Aug, 2003

phil

Country: France

Url: <http://perso.wanadoo.fr/philippe.baret/>

Registered on tw.o : Tue 15 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 27 Oct, 2003

Stryker

Country: Canada

Name: Chris Austin

Registered on tw.o : Tue 15 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

kodewulf

Country: Australia

Registered on tw.o : Tue 15 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 24 Jul, 2003

ZZamboni

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Tue 15 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 11 Aug, 2003

anarkim

Country: Denmark

Registered on tw.o : Wed 16 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 20 Oct, 2003

swythan

Country: United\_Kingdom

Registered on tw.o : Sat 19 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 20 Nov, 2003

natster

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Thu 24 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 12 Nov, 2003

sting

Country: Taiwan

Registered on tw.o : Thu 24 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 20 Nov, 2003

MartinGeisler  
Country: Denmark  
Name: Martin Geisler  
Url: <http://gimpster.com/>  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 28 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 23 Aug, 2003

shinhan  
Country: Yugoslavia  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 28 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

connermo  
Country: Other  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 29 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 17 Nov, 2003

wolff\_borg  
Country: Australia  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 29 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sun 30 Nov, 2003

mwexler  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 29 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 19 Nov, 2003

reid  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 29 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

luci  
Country: Czech\_Republic  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 30 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 03 Dec, 2003

mortenson  
Country: Japan  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 31 Jul, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sun 03 Aug, 2003

Chealer9  
Country: Canada  
Role: TikiWiki bug Trackers Organizer  
Name: Philippe Cloutier

Registered on tw.o : Fri 01 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

lueders  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 02 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

Franck  
Country: Other  
Role: mapserver expert  
Name: Franck Martin  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 05 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

fukuchi  
Country: Japan  
Name: Kentaro Fukuchi  
Url: <http://matsu-www.is.titech.ac.jp/~fukuchi/index.en.html>  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 05 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 02 Dec, 2003

marcius  
Country: Italy  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 06 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

dthacker  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 06 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 06 Nov, 2003

Mixolyde  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 07 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 11 Sep, 2003

gclift  
Country: Other  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 08 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

mgfeller  
Country: Switzerland  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 10 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

guidewebmaster  
Country: Canada



Registered on tw.o : Mon 11 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 18 Sep, 2003

bluybrink  
Country: Slovakia  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 14 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 26 Nov, 2003

terris  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 14 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

jkring  
Country: United\_States  
Name: Jim Kring  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 20 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 26 Nov, 2003

pacoit  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 21 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sun 12 Oct, 2003

DavidBright  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 21 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 02 Dec, 2003

DanielX  
Country: Canada  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 21 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

mchurchward  
Country: Canada  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 25 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 26 Nov, 2003

mitchmurphy  
Country: Other  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 26 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 23 Oct, 2003

jenolan  
Country: Australia  
Role: Dogsbody  
Name: Larry  
Url: <http://www.jenolan.org>

Registered on tw.o : Tue 26 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 22 Oct, 2003

michiel  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 27 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 27 Aug, 2003

wvdploeg  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 27 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 27 Aug, 2003

phunkymunky  
Country: United\_Kingdom  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 28 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

BeastRider  
Country: Other  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 29 Aug, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 20 Nov, 2003

Karneevor  
Country: Denmark  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 01 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

Traivor  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 02 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

bligneri  
Country: Canada  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 06 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 13 Oct, 2003

aw  
Country: United\_Kingdom  
Registered on tw.o : Sat 06 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

ysoya  
Country: South\_Korea  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 08 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

clbustos

Country: Other  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 09 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 15 Oct, 2003

ibtubed  
Country: United\_States  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 11 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

richtl  
Country: United\_States  
Name: Richard Tango-Lowy  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 14 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 14 Nov, 2003

DavorCengija  
Country: Croatia  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 14 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

gongo  
Country: Belgium  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 14 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 26 Nov, 2003

kadams54  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 14 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 23 Oct, 2003

spaztica  
Country: Turkey  
Registered on tw.o : Mon 15 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 11 Nov, 2003

markusvk  
Country: Japan  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 17 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 03 Dec, 2003

grom  
Name: Cameron Zemek  
Url: <http://jeppers.sourceforge.net/>  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 17 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 01 Oct, 2003

rlpowell  
Country: United\_States

Name: Robin Lee Powell  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 18 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 17 Oct, 2003

leehongfay  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 19 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 19 Sep, 2003

freevic  
Country: Canada  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 19 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Wed 24 Sep, 2003

maymann  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 21 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Fri 31 Oct, 2003

docekal  
Country: Sweden  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 25 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Thu 27 Nov, 2003

luca  
Country: Italy  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 26 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 14 Oct, 2003

mikespub  
Country: Belgium  
Registered on tw.o : Sun 28 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Sun 16 Nov, 2003

ingesol  
Registered on tw.o : Tue 30 Sep, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Tue 30 Sep, 2003

andrzej  
Country: Poland  
Registered on tw.o : Wed 01 Oct, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 24 Nov, 2003

vikas  
Registered on tw.o : Thu 02 Oct, 2003  
Last login on tw.o : Mon 10 Nov, 2003

isotopp  
Registered on tw.o : Fri 03 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 09 Oct, 2003

siridhar

Country: India

Role: Documentation (video tutorials)

Name: Sridhar

Url: <http://www.srikat.com>

Registered on tw.o : Sun 05 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 19 Nov, 2003

roysinn

Country: Canada

Registered on tw.o : Thu 09 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

xenfasa

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Mon 13 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 19 Nov, 2003

colorado

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Wed 15 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 03 Dec, 2003

MagicFab

Country: Colombia

Registered on tw.o : Fri 17 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 28 Oct, 2003

Buiu

Country: Brazil

Registered on tw.o : Thu 23 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

thraxisp

Registered on tw.o : Mon 27 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 14 Nov, 2003

die

Registered on tw.o : Thu 30 Oct, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

gillesm

Registered on tw.o : Mon 03 Nov, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 11 Nov, 2003

ipso

Registered on tw.o : Thu 06 Nov, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 06 Nov, 2003

musus

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Sun 16 Nov, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Thu 04 Dec, 2003

pyrotknix

Registered on tw.o : Sun 23 Nov, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Sun 23 Nov, 2003

cube

Registered on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Sat 29 Nov, 2003

swf

Country: United\_States

Name: Scott W Fischer

Registered on tw.o : Thu 03 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Tue 02 Dec, 2003

soshea

Country: Other

Registered on tw.o : Tue 08 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 24 Sep, 2003

jasko

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Mon 14 Jul, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Wed 15 Oct, 2003

oliver

Registered on tw.o : Mon 18 Aug, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Mon 18 Aug, 2003

bpfaffenberger

Country: United\_States

Registered on tw.o : Tue 09 Sep, 2003

Last login on tw.o : Fri 05 Dec, 2003

amotl

andreas\_bac

anenga

aneuhaus

avanderbilt

bburgaud

broubrou

carolg

dabase

damienmckenna

dgreen34

epolidor

essele

gilshwartz

jwigdahl

krose

lechuckdapirate

lonelyp

marcop13

marp2901

mcgucken

millette

natig

neidhart

oliverscheck

otalunak

p3k

pippone

plungerman

pratesi

ramiro\_v

razorwyre

ronchon

rsaugier

rubaiyat

swillie

todd\_here

vaguery

wu-lee

xbtheria

---